

TPM Main Part 1 Design Principles

**Specification Version 1.2
Revision 85
13 February 2005
Published**

Contact: tpmwg@trustedcomputinggroup.org

TCG PUBLISHED

Copyright © TCG 2003 - 2005

TCG

Copyright © 2003 Trusted Computing Group, Incorporated.

Disclaimer

THIS SPECIFICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH NO WARRANTIES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NONINFRINGEMENT, FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OTHERWISE ARISING OUT OF ANY PROPOSAL, SPECIFICATION OR SAMPLE. Without limitation, TCG disclaims all liability, including liability for infringement of any proprietary rights, relating to use of information in this specification and to the implementation of this specification, and TCG disclaims all liability for cost of procurement of substitute goods or services, lost profits, loss of use, loss of data or any incidental, consequential, direct, indirect, or special damages, whether under contract, tort, warranty or otherwise, arising in any way out of use or reliance upon this specification or any information herein.

No license, express or implied, by estoppel or otherwise, to any TCG or TCG member intellectual property rights is granted herein.

Except that a license is hereby granted by TCG to copy and reproduce this specification for internal use only.

Contact the Trusted Computing Group at www.trustedcomputinggroup.org for information on specification licensing through membership agreements.

Any marks and brands contained herein are the property of their respective owners.

Acknowledgement

TCG wishes to thank all those who contributed to this specification. This version builds on the work published in version 1.1 and those who helped on that version have helped on this version.

A special thank you goes to the members of the TPM workgroup who had early access to this version and made invaluable contributions, corrections and support.

David Grawrock

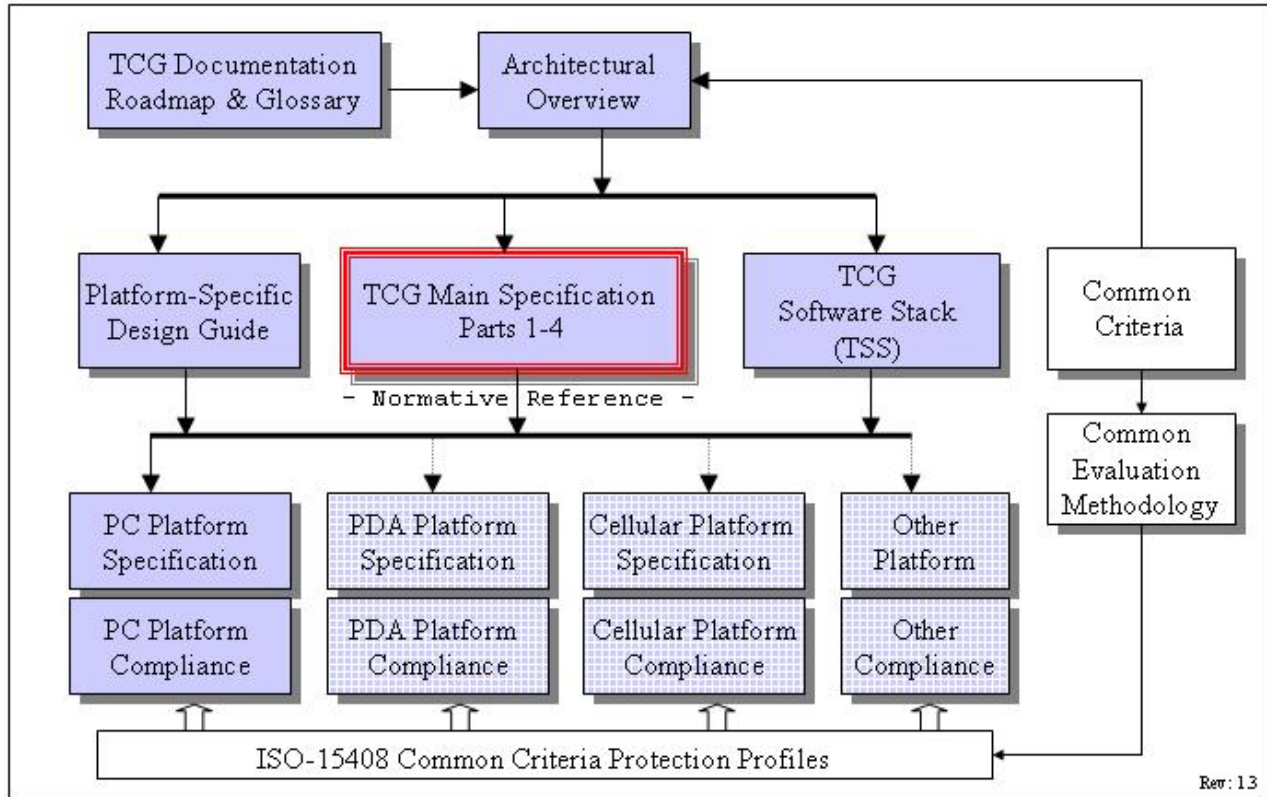
TPM Workgroup chair

Change History

Version	Date	Description
Rev 50	Jun 2003	Started 30 Jun 2003 by David Grawrock First cut at the design principles
Rev 52	Jul 2003	Started 15 Jul 2003 by David Grawrock Moved
Rev 58	Aug 2003	Started 27 Aug 2003 by David Grawrock All emails through 28 August 2003 New delegation from Graeme merged
Rev 62	Oct 2003	Approved by WG, TC and Board as public release of 1.2
Rev 63	Oct 2003	Started 2 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Kerry email 7 Oct "Various items in rev62" kerry email 10 Oct "Other issues in rev 62" Changes to audit generation
Rev 64	Oct 2003	Started 12 Oct 2003 by David Grawrock Removed PCRWRITE usage in the NV write commands Added locality to transport_out log Disable readpubek now set in takeownership. DisableReadpubek now deprecated, as the functionality is moot. Oshrats email regarding DSAP/OSAP sessions and the invalidation of them on delegation changes Changes for CMK commands. Oshrats email with minor 63 comments
Rev 65	Nov 2003	Action in NV_DefineSpace to ignore the Booleans in the input structure (Kerry email of 10/30) Transport changes from markus 11/6 email Set rules for encryption of parameters for OIAP, OSAP and DSAP Rewrote section on debug PCR to specify that the platform spec must indicate which register is the debug PCR Orlando FtF decisions CMK changes from Graeme
Rev 66	Nov 2003	Comment that OSAP tied to owner delegation needs to be treated internally in the TPM as a DSAP session Minor edits from Monty Added new GetCapability as requested by PC Specific WG Added new DP section that shows mandatory and optional Oshrat email of 11/27 Change PCR attributes to use locality selection instead of an array of BOOL's Removed transport sessions as something to invalidate when a resource type is flushed. Oshrat email of 12/3 added checks for NV_Locked in the NV commands Additional emails from the WG for minor editing fixes
Rev 67	Dec 2003	Made locality_modifier always a 1 size Changed NV index values to add the reserved bit. Also noticed that the previous NV index values were 10 bytes not 8. Edited them to correct size. Audit changes to ensure audit listed as optional and the previous commands properly deleted Added new OSAP authorization encryption. Changes made with new entity types, new section in DP (bottom of doc) and all command rewritten to check for the new encryption
Rev 68	Jan 2004	Added new section to identify all changes made for FIPS. Made some FIPS changes on creating and loading of keys Added change that OSAP encryption IV creation always uses both odd and even nonces Added SEALX ordinal and changes to TPM_STORED_DATA12 and seal/unseal to support this
Rev 69	Feb 2004	Fixup on stored_data12.

		<p>Removed magic4 from the GPIO</p> <p>Added in section 34 of DP further discussion of versioning and getcap</p> <p>DP todo section cleaned up</p> <p>Changed store_privkey in migrate_asymkey</p> <p>Moved text for getcapabilities – hopefully it is easier to read and follow through on now.</p>
Rev 70	Mar 2004	<p>Rewrite structure doc on PCR selection usage.</p> <p>New getcap to answer questions regarding TPM support for pcr selection size</p>
Rev 71	Mar 2004	<p>Change terms from authorization data to AuthData.</p>
Rev 72	Mar 2004	<p>Zimmermann's changes for DAA</p> <p>Added TPM_Quote2, this includes new structure and ordinal</p> <p>Updated key usage table to include the 1.2 commands</p> <p>Added security properties section that links the main spec to the conformance WG guidelines (in section 1)</p>
Rev 73	Apr 2004	<p>Changed CMK_MigrateKey to use TPM_KEY12 and removed two input parameters</p> <p>Allowed TPM_Getcapability and TPM_GetTestResult to execute prior to TPM_Startup when in failure mode</p>
Rev 74	May 2004	<p>Minor editing to reflect comments on web site.</p> <p>Locked spec and submitted for IP review</p>
Rev 76	Aug 2004	<p>All comments from the WG</p> <p>Included new SetValue command and all of the indexes to make that work</p>
Rev 77	Aug 2004	<p>All comments from the WG</p>
Rev 78	Oct 2004	<p>Comments from WG. Added new getcaps to report and query current TPM version</p>
Rev 82	Jan 2005	<p>All changes from emails and minutes (I think).</p>
Rev 84	Feb 2005	<p>Final changes for 1.2 level 2</p>

TCG Doc Roadmap – Main Spec



TCG Main Spec Roadmap

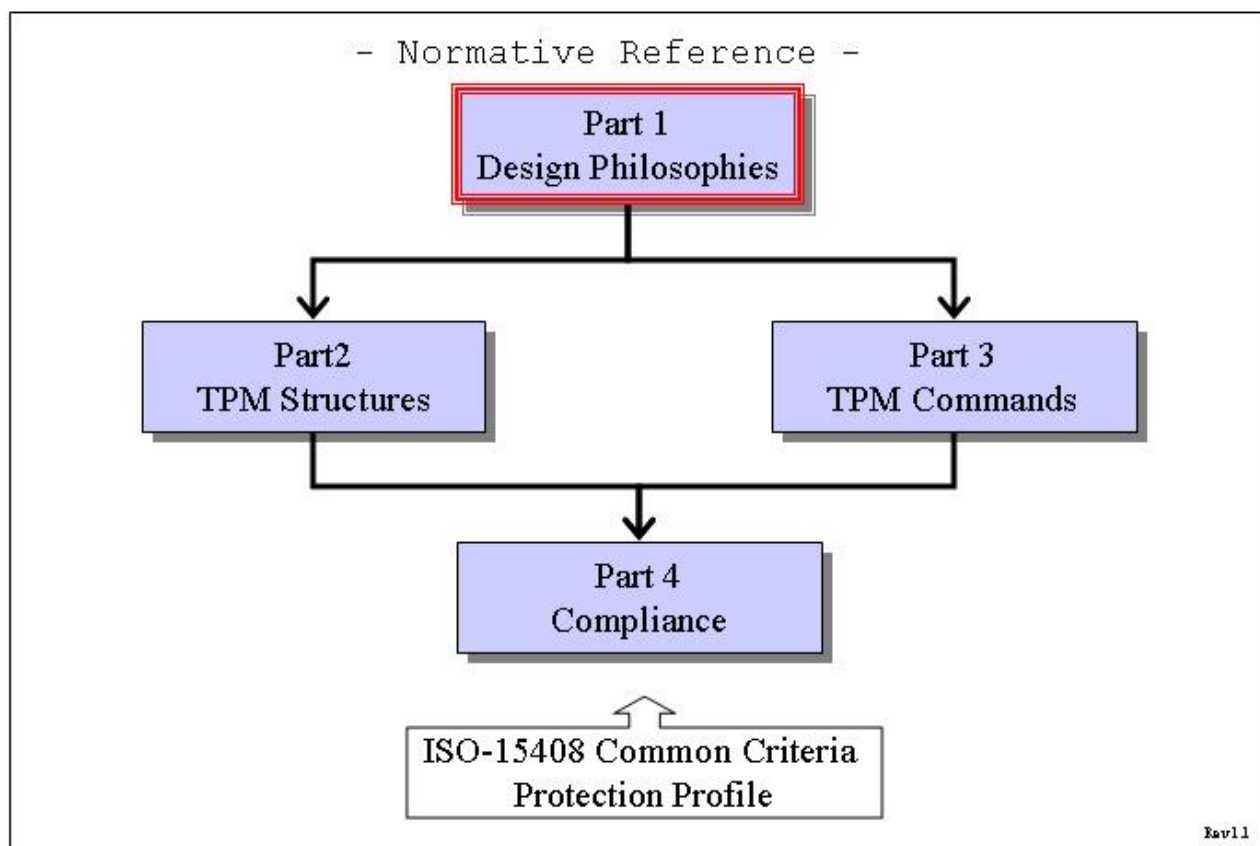


Table of Contents

1. Scope and Audience.....	1
1.1 Key words.....	1
1.2 Statement Type.....	1
2. Description.....	2
2.1 TODO (notes to keep the editor on track).....	2
2.2 Questions.....	2
2.2.1 Delegation Questions.....	6
2.2.2 NV Questions.....	11
3. Protection.....	13
3.1 Introduction.....	13
3.2 Threat.....	14
3.3 Protection of functions.....	14
3.4 Protection of information.....	14
3.5 Side effects.....	15
3.6 Exceptions and clarifications.....	15
4. TPM Architecture.....	17
4.1 Interoperability.....	17
4.2 Components.....	17
4.2.1 Input and Output.....	18
4.2.2 Cryptographic Co-Processor.....	18
4.2.3 Key Generation.....	20
4.2.4 HMAC Engine.....	21
4.2.5 Random Number Generator.....	22
4.2.6 SHA-1 Engine.....	24
4.2.7 Power Detection.....	25
4.2.8 Opt-In.....	25
4.2.9 Execution Engine.....	26
4.2.10 Non-Volatile Memory.....	26
4.3 Data Integrity Register (DIR).....	27
4.4 Platform Configuration Register (PCR).....	27
5. Endorsement Key Creation.....	30
5.1 Controlling Access to PRIVEK.....	30
5.2 Controlling Access to PUBEK.....	31
6. Attestation Identity Keys.....	32
7. TPM Ownership.....	33

7.1	Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage	33
8.	Authentication and Authorization Data	34
8.1	Dictionary Attack Considerations	35
9.	TPM Operation.....	37
9.1	TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow	38
9.1.1	Initialization	38
9.2	Self-Test Modes	39
9.2.1	Operational Self-Test.....	40
9.3	Startup.....	43
9.4	Operational Mode.....	43
9.4.1	Enabling a TPM.....	45
9.4.2	Activating a TPM.....	46
9.4.3	Taking TPM Ownership	47
9.4.4	Transitioning Between Operational States	49
9.5	Clearing the TPM	49
10.	Physical Presence	51
11.	Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR)	53
11.1	Platform Identity	53
11.2	RTR to Platform Binding	54
11.3	Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations	54
11.4	Attestation Identity Keys.....	54
11.4.1	AIK Creation.....	55
11.4.2	AIK Storage.....	56
12.	Root of Trust for Storage (RTS).....	57
12.1	Loading and Unloading Blobs	57
13.	Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols.....	58
13.1	Authorization Session Setup	60
13.2	Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples.....	61
13.2.1	Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP)	62
13.3	Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)	65
13.4	Authorization Session Handles	69
13.5	Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP)	70
13.6	AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP).....	72
13.7	Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACCP)	73
14.	FIPS 140 Physical Protection	74
14.1	TPM Profile for FIPS Certification	74
15.	Maintenance	75

15.1	Field Upgrade.....	76
16.	Proof of Locality	78
17.	Monotonic Counter.....	79
18.	Transport Protection	82
18.1	Transport encryption and authorization	83
18.1.1	MGF1 parameters	85
18.1.2	HMAC calculation.....	86
18.1.3	Transport log creation	86
18.1.4	Additional Encryption Mechanisms	87
18.2	Transport Error Handling.....	87
18.3	Exclusive Transport Sessions.....	88
18.4	Transport Audit Handling	89
18.4.1	Auditing of wrapped commands.....	89
19.	Audit Commands	90
19.1	Audit Monotonic Counter.....	92
19.2	Audit Generation	92
19.3	Effect of audit failing after successful completion of a command	93
20.	Design Section on Time Stamping	94
20.1	Tick Components	94
20.2	Basic Tick Stamp.....	95
20.3	Associating a TCV with UTC.....	95
20.4	Additional Comments and Questions.....	97
21.	Context Management	100
22.	Eviction	102
23.	Session pool	103
24.	Initialization Operations	104
25.	HMAC digest rules.....	106
26.	Generic authorization session termination rules.....	107
27.	PCR Grand Unification Theory	108
27.1	Validate Key for use	111
28.	Non Volatile Storage.....	112
28.1	NV storage design principles	113
28.1.1	NV Storage use models	113
28.2	Use of NV storage during manufacturing.....	115
29.	Delegation Model.....	116
29.1	Table Requirements.....	116
29.2	How this works	117

29.3	Family Table.....	119
29.4	Delegate Table.....	120
29.5	Delegation Administration Control.....	121
29.5.1	Control in Phase 1	122
29.5.2	Control in Phase 2	123
29.5.3	Control in Phase 3	123
29.6	Family Verification.....	123
29.7	Use of commands for different states of TPM.....	125
29.8	Delegation Authorization Values.....	125
29.8.1	Using the authorization value.....	126
29.9	DSAP description	126
30.	Physical Presence	130
30.1	Use of Physical Presence	130
31.	TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption	132
31.1.1	TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1.....	132
31.1.2	TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15	133
31.1.3	TPM_ES_SYM_CNT	133
31.1.4	TPM_ES_SYM_OFB	133
31.2	TPM Internal Digital Signatures	134
31.2.1	TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1.....	134
31.2.2	TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER.....	134
31.2.3	TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO.....	134
31.2.4	Use of Signature Schemes	134
32.	Key Usage Table	136
33.	Direct Anonymous Attestation	138
33.1	TPM_DAA_JOIN	138
33.2	TPM_DAA_Sign	140
33.3	DAA Command summary	140
33.3.1	TPM setup.....	141
33.3.2	JOIN	141
33.3.3	SIGN	145
34.	General Purpose IO.....	148
35.	Redirection.....	149
36.	Structure Versioning	150
37.	Certified Migration Key Type	152
37.1	Certified Migration Requirements.....	152
37.2	Key Creation.....	153

37.3 Migrate CMK to a MA..... 153

37.4 Migrate CMK to a MSA 154

38. Revoke Trust..... 155

39. Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks 157

40. Optional Authentication Encryption..... 160

41. 1.1a and 1.2 Differences..... 162

1. Scope and Audience

The TPCA main specification is an industry specification that enables trust in computing platforms in general. The main specification is broken into parts to make the role of each document clear. A version of the specification (like 1.2) requires all parts to be a complete specification.

A TPM designer **MUST** be aware that for a complete definition of all requirements necessary to build a TPM, the designer **MUST** use the appropriate platform specific specification for all TPM requirements.

1.1 Key words

The key words “**MUST**,” “**MUST NOT**,” “**REQUIRED**,” “**SHALL**,” “**SHALL NOT**,” “**SHOULD**,” “**SHOULD NOT**,” “**RECOMMENDED**,” “**MAY**,” and “**OPTIONAL**” in the chapters 2-10 normative statements are to be interpreted as described in [RFC-2119].

1.2 Statement Type

Please note a very important distinction between different sections of text throughout this document. You will encounter two distinctive kinds of text: informative comment and normative statements. Because most of the text in this specification will be of the kind normative statements, the authors have informally defined it as the default and, as such, have specifically called out text of the kind informative comment. They have done this by flagging the beginning and end of each informative comment and highlighting its text in gray. This means that unless text is specifically marked as of the kind informative comment, you can consider it of the kind normative statements.

For example:

Start of informative comment

This is the first paragraph of 1–n paragraphs containing text of the kind *informative comment* ...

This is the second paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

This is the nth paragraph of text of the kind *informative comment* ...

To understand the TCG specification the user **MUST** read the specification. (This use of **MUST** does not require any action).

End of informative comment

This is the first paragraph of one or more paragraphs (and/or sections) containing the text of the kind normative statements ...

To understand the TCG specification the user **MUST** read the specification. (This use of **MUST** indicates a keyword usage and requires an action).

35 **2. Description**

36 The design principles give the basic concepts of the TPM and generic information relative to
37 TPM functionality.

38 A TPM designer MUST review and implement the information in the TPM Main specification
39 (parts 1-4) and review the platform specific document for the intended platform. The
40 platform specific document will contain normative statements that affect the design and
41 implementation of a TPM.

42 A TPM designer MUST review and implement the requirements, including testing and
43 evaluation, as set by the TCG Conformance Workgroup. The TPM MUST comply with the
44 requirements and pass any evaluations set by the Conformance Workgroup. The TPM MAY
45 undergo more stringent testing and evaluation.

46 The question section keeps track of questions throughout the development of the
47 specification and hence can have information that is no longer current or moot. The
48 purpose of the questions is to track the history of various decisions in the specification to
49 allow those following behind to gain some insight into the committees thinking on various
50 points.

51 **2.1 TODO (notes to keep the editor on track)**

52

53 **2.2 Questions**

54 1. How to version the flag structures?

55 a. I suggest that we simply put the version into the structure and pass it back in the
56 structure. Add the version information into the persistent and volatile flag structures.

57 2. When using the encryption transport failures are easy to see. Also the watcher on the
58 line can tell where the error occurred. If the failure occurs at the transport level the
59 response is an error (small packet) and it is in the clear. If the error occurs during
60 execution of the command then the response is a small encrypted packet. Should we
61 expand the packet size or simply let this go through?

62 a. Not an issue.

63 3. Do we restrict the loading of a counter to once per TPM_Startup(Clear)?

64 a. Yes once a counter is set it must remain the same until the next successful startup.

65 4. Does the time stamp work as a change on the tag or as a wrapped command like the
66 transport protection.

67 a. While possibly easier at the HW level the tag mechanism seems to be harder at the
68 SW level as to what commands are sent to the TPM. The issue of how the SW
69 presents the TS session to the SW writer is not an issue. This is due to the fact that
70 however the session is presented to the SW writer the writer must take into account
71 which commands are being time stamped and how to manage the log etc. So
72 accepting a mechanism that is easy for the HW developer and having the SW manage
73 the interface is a sufficient direction.

- 74 5. When returning time information do we return the entire time structure or just the time
75 and have the caller obtain all the information with a GetCap call?
- 76 a. All time returns will use the entire structure with all the details.
- 77 6. Do we want to return a real clock value or a value with some additional bits (like a
78 monotonic value with a time value)?
- 79 a. Add a count value into the time structure.
- 80 7. Do we need NTP or is SNTP sufficient?
- 81 a. The TPM will not run the time protocol itself. What the TPM will do is accept a value
82 from outside software and a hash of the protocols that produced the value. This
83 allows the platform to use whatever they want to set the value from secure time to
84 the local PC clock.
- 85 8. Can an owner destroy a TPM by issuing repeated CreateCounter commands?
- 86 a. A TPM may place a throttle on this command to avoid burn issues. It MUST not be
87 possible to burn out the TPM counter under normal operating conditions. The
88 CreateCounter command is limited to only once per successful
89 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR).
- 90 b. This answer is now somewhat moot as the command to createcounter is now owner
91 authorized. This allows the owner to decide when to authorize the counter creation.
92 As there are only 4 counters available it is not an issue with having the owner
93 continue to authorize counters.
- 94 9. What happens to a transport session (log etc.) on an S3?
- 95 a. Should these be the same as the authorization sessions? The saving of a transport
96 session across S3 is not a security concern but is a memory concern. The TPM MUST
97 clear the transport session on TPM_Startup(CLEAR) and MAY clear the session on
98 TPM_Startup(any).
- 99 10. While you can't increment or create a new counter after startup can you read a counter
100 other than the active one?
- 101 a. You may read other counters
- 102 11. When we audit a command that is not authorized should we hash the parameters and
103 provide that as part of the audit event, currently they are set to null.
- 104 a. We should hash parameters of non-authorized commands
- 105 12. There is a fundamental problem with the encryption of commands in the transport and
106 auditing. If we cover a command we have no way to audit, if we show the command then
107 it isn't protected. Can we expose the command (ordinal) and not the parameters?
- 108 a. If the owner has requested that a function be audited then the execute transport
109 return will include sufficient information to produce the audit entry.
- 110 13. How to set the time in the audit structure and tell the log what is going on.
- 111 a. The time in the audit structure is set to nulls except when audit occurs as part of a
112 transport session. In that case the audit command is set from the time value in the
113 TPM.

- 114 14. Is there a limit to the number of locality modifiers?
- 115 a. Yes, the TPM need only support a maximum of 4 modifiers. The definition of the
116 modifiers is always a platform specific issue.
- 117 15. How do we evict various resources?
- 118 a. There are numerous eviction routines in the current spec. We will deprecate the
119 various types and move to TPM_Flushxxx for all resource types.
- 120 16. Can you flush a saved context?
- 121 a. Yes, you must be able to invalidate saved contexts. This would be done by making
122 sure that the TPM could not load any saved context.
- 123 17. What is the value of maintaining the clock value when the time is not incrementing? Can
124 this be due to the fact that the time is now known to be at least after the indicated time?
- 125 a. Moot point now as we don't keep the clock value at
- 126 18. Should we change the current structures and add the tag?
- 127 a. TODO
- 128 19. Can we have a bank of bits (change bit locality) for each of the 4 levels of locality?
- 129 a. Now
- 130 20. How do we find out what sessions are active? Do we care?
- 131 a. I would say yes we care and we should use the same mechanism that we do for the
132 keys. A GetCap that will return the handles.
- 133 21. Can we limit the transport sessions to only one?
- 134 a. No, we should have as a minimum 2 sessions. One gets into deadlocks and such so
135 the minimum should be 2.
- 136 22. Does the TPM need to keep the audit structure or can it simply keep a hash?
- 137 a. The TPM just keeps the audit digest and no other information.
- 138 23. What happens to an OSAP session if the key associated with it is taken off chip with a
139 "SaveContext"? What happens if the key saveContext occurs after an OSAP auth context
140 that is already off chip? How do you later connect the key to the auth session (without
141 having to store all sorts of things on chip)? Are we really honestly convinced that we've
142 thought of all the possible ramifications of saving and restoring auth sessions? And is it
143 really true that all the things we say about a saved auth session do/should apply to a
144 saved key (which is to say is there really a single loadContext command and a single
145 context structure)?
- 146 a. Saved context a reliable indication of the linkage between the OSAP and the key.
147 When saving save auth then key, on load key then auth. Auth session checks for the
148 key and if not found fails.
- 149 24. Why is addNonce an output of 16.5 loadContext?
- 150 a. If it's wrong, it's a little late to find out now - why not have it as an input and have
151 the TPM return an error if the encrypted addNonce doesn't match the input? The
152 thought was that the nonce area might not be a nonce but was information that the

- 153 caller could put in. If they use it as a nonce fine, but they could also use it as a label
154 or sequence number or ... any value the caller wanted
- 155 25. Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceSession?
- 156 a. contextNonceSession does not have to be saved across S3 states so there is no
157 endurance problem.
- 158 26. Is there a memory endurance problem with contextNonceKey?
- 159 a. contextNonceKey only changes on TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) so it's endurance is the
160 same as a PCR.
- 161 27. The debate continues about restoring a resource's handle during TPM_LoadContext.
- 162 a. Debate ends by having the load context be informed of what the loader's opinion is
163 about the handle. The requestor can indicate that it wishes the same handle and if
164 the TPM can perform that task it does, if it cannot then the load fails.
- 165 28. Interesting attack is now available with the new audit close flag on get audit signed.
166 Anyone with access to a signing key can close the audit log. The only requirement on the
167 command is that the key be authorized. While there is no loss of information (as the
168 attacker can always destroy the external log) does the closing of a log make things look
169 different. This does enable a burn out attack. The ability to closeAudit enables a new
170 DenialOfService attack.
- 171 a. Resolution: The TPM Owner owns the audit process, so the TPM Owner should have
172 exclusive control over closeAudit. Hence the signing key used to closeAudit must be
173 an AIK. Note that the owner can choose to give this AIK's AuthData value to the OS,
174 so that the OS can automatically close an audit session during platform power down.
175 But such operations are outside this specification.
- 176 29. Should we keep the E function in the tick counter?
- 177 a. From Graeme, I would prefer to see these calculations deleted. The calculation starts
178 with one assertion and derives a contradictory assertion. Generally, there seems little
179 value in trying to derive an equality relationship when nothing is known about the
180 path to and from the Time Authority.
- 181 30. What is the difference between DIR_Quote and DirReadSigned?
- 182 a. Appears to be none so DIR_Quote deleted
- 183 31. The tickRate parameter associates tick with seconds and has no way to indicate that the
184 rate is greater than one second. Is this OK?
- 185 a. Do we need to allow for tick rates that are slower than once per second. We report in
186 nanoseconds.
- 187 32. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 2 authorization sessions. Where do we put this
188 requirement in the spec?
- 189 33. Can we find a use for the DIR and BIT areas for locality 0?
- 190 a. They have no protections so in many ways they are just extra. We leave this as it is
191 as locality 0 may mean something else on a platform other than a PC.
- 192 34. How do we send back the transport log information on each execute transport?

- 193 a. It is 64 bytes in length and would make things very difficult to include on every
194 command. Change wrappedaudit to be input params, add output params and the
195 caller has all information necessary to create the structure to add into the digest.
- 196 35. The transport log structure is a single structure used both for input and output with the
197 only difference being the setting of ticks to 0 on input and a real value on output, do we
198 need two structures.
- 199 a. I believe that a single structure is fine
- 200 36. For TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) I added that all keys would be flushed. Is this right?
- 201 a. Yes
- 202 37. Why have 2 auths for release transport signed? It is an easy attack to simply kill the
203 session.
- 204 a. The reason is that an attacker can close the session and get a signature of the
205 session log. We are currently not sure of the level of this attack but by having the
206 creator of the session authorize the signing of the log it is completely avoided.
- 207 38. 19.3 Action 3 (startup/state) doesn't reference the situation where there is no saved
208 state. My presumption is that you can still run startup/clear, but maybe you have to do
209 a hardware reset?
- 210 a. DWG I don't think so. This could be an attack and a way to get the wrong PCR values
211 into the system. The BIOS is taking one path and may not set PCR values. Hence the
212 response is to go into failed selftest mode.
- 213 39. What happens to a transport session if a command clears the TPM like revokeTrust
- 214 a. This is fine. The transport session is not complete but the session protected the
215 information till the command that changed the TPM. It is impossible to get a log from
216 the session or to sign the session but that is what the caller wanted.

217 2.2.1 Delegation Questions

- 218 40. Is loading the table by untrusted process ok? Does this cause a problem when the new
219 table is loaded and permissions change?
- 220 a. Yes, the fill table can be done by any process. A TPM Owner wishing to validate the
221 table can perform the operations necessary to gain assurance of the table entries.
- 222 41. Are the permissions for a table row sensitive?
- 223 a. Currently we believe not but there are some attack models that knowing the
224 permissions makes the start of the attack easier. It does not make the success of the
225 attack any easier. Example if I know that a single process is the only process in the
226 table that has the CreateAIK capability then the attacker only attempts to break into
227 the single process and not all others.
- 228 42. What software is in use to modify the table?
- 229 a. The table can be updated by any software or process given the capability to manage
230 the table. Three likely sources of the software would be a BIOS process, an applet of
231 a trusted process and a standalone self-booting (from CD-ROM) management
232 application.
- 233 43. Who holds the TPM Owner password?

- 234 a. There is no change to the holding of the TPM Owner token. The permissions do allow
235 the creation of an application that sets the TPM Owner token to a random value and
236 then seals the value to the application.
- 237 44.How are these changes created such that there is minimal change to the current TPM?
- 238 a. This works by using the current authorization process and only making changes in
239 the authorization and not for each and every command.
- 240 45.What about S3 and other events?
- 241 a. Permissions, once granted, are non-volatile.
- 242 46.The permission bit to changeOwnerAuth (bit 11) gives rise to the functionality that the
243 SW that has this bit can control the TPM completely. This includes removing control
244 from the TPM Owner as the TPM Owner value will now be a random value only known to
245 SW. There are use models where this is good and bad, do we want this functionality?
- 246 47.Pros and cons of physical enable table when TPM Owner is present – Pro physically
247 present user can make SW play fair. Con – physically present user can override the
248 desires of a TPM Owner.
- 249 48.Do we need to reset TPM_PERMISSION_KEY at some time?
- 250 a. We know that the key is NOT reset on TPM_ClearOwner.
- 251 49.What is the meaning of using permission table in an OIAP and OSAP mode?
- 252 a. Delegate table can be used in either OIAP or OSAP mode.
- 253 50.Can you grant permissions without assigning the permissions to a specific process?
- 254 a. Yes, do a SetRow with a PCR_SELECTION of null and the permissions are available
255 to any process.
- 256 51.Do we need a ClearTableOwner?
- 257 a. I would assert that we do not need this command. The TPM Owner can perform
258 SetRow with NULLS four times and creates the exact same thing. Not having this
259 command lowers the number of ordinals the TPM is required to support.
- 260 52.There are some issues with the currently defined behavior of familyID and the
261 verificationCount.
- 262 a. Talked to David for 30 mins. We decided that maxFamilyID is set to zero at
263 manufacture, and incremented for every FamTable_SetRow
- 264 b. It is the responsibility of DelTable_SetRow to set the appropriate familyID
- 265 c. DelTable_SetRow fails if the provided familyID is not active and present somewhere
266 in the FamTable
- 267 d. FillTable works differently. It effectively resets the family table (invalidating all active
268 rows) and sets up as many rows as are needed based on the number of families
269 specified in FillTable
- 270 e. This still needs a bit of work. Presumably the caller of FillTable uses a “fake”
271 familyID, and this is changed to the actual familyID when the fill happens
- 272 53.There are some issues with the verificationCount.

- 273 a. Uber-issue. If none of the rows in the table are allowed to create other rows and
274 export them, then the “sign” of the table is meaningful
- 275 b. If one of the rows is allowed to create and export new rows, is there any real meaning
276 to “the current set of exported rows?” (i.e. SW can just up and make new rows).
- 277 54. Should section 4.4, TPM_DelTable_ClearTable), section 4.5 (TPM_DelTable_SetEnable),
278 and section 4.7 (TPM_DelTable_Set_Admin) all say “there must be UNAMBIGUOUS
279 evidence of the presence of physical access...” Is this okay?
- 280 a. Answer: No, group agreed to change UNAMBIGUOUS to BEST EFFORT in all three
281 sections.
- 282 55. Is FamilyID a sensitive value?
- 283 a. If so, why? Agreement: FamilyID is not a sensitive value.
- 284 56. Should TPM_TakeOwnership be included in permissions bits (see bit 12 in section 3.1)?
- 285 a. Enables a better administrative monitor and may enable user to take ownership
286 easier. Agreement leave it in and change informative comments to reflect the reasons.
- 287 57. [From the TPM_DelTable_SetRow command informative comments]: Note that there are
288 two types of rights: family rights (you can either edit your family’s rows or grab new
289 rows) and administrative rights.
- 290 a. This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to be resolved.
- 291 58. [From the TPM_DelTable_ExportRow command informational comments]:
- 292 a. Does not effect content of exported row left behind in the table;
- 293 b. Valid for all rows in the table;
- 294 c. Does not need to be OwnerAuth’d;
- 295 d. Family Rights are that family can only export a row from rows 0-3 if row belongs to
296 the family, but rows 4 and upwards can be exported by any Trusted Process, without
297 any family checking being done. This is really just an editor’s note, not a question to
298 be resolved.
- 299 59. When a Family Table row is set, the verificationCount is set to 1, make sure that is
300 consistently used in all other command actions.
- 301 a. Done.
- 302 60. SetEnable and SetEnableOwner enable and disable all rows in a table, not just the rows
303 belong to the family of the process that used the SetEnable and/or SetEnableOwner
304 commands. This is also true for SetAdmin and SetAdminOwner. Can anybody come up
305 with a use scenario where that causes any problems?
- 306 61. In command actions where the TPM must walk the delegation table looking for a
307 configuration that matches the command input parameters (PCRinfo and/or
308 authValues) and there are rows in the table with duplicate values, what does the TPM
309 do? Is there any reason not to use the rule “the TPM starts walking the table starting
310 with the first row and use the first row it finds with matching values”?
- 311 a. Answer to this question may mean change to pseudo code in section 2.3, Using the
312 AuthData Value, which currently shows the TPM walking the delegation table,
313 starting with the first row, and using the first row it finds with matching values.

- 314 62. What familyID value signals a family table row that is not in use/contains invalid
315 values?
- 316 a. To get consistency in all the command Actions that use this, that FamilyID value has
317 been edited in all places to be NULL, instead of 0. Yes, FamilyID value of NULL
318 signals a family table row that is not in use or contains invalid values.
- 319 63. From section 2.4, Delegate Table Fill and Enablement: “The changing of a TPM Owner
320 does not automatically clear the delegate table. Changing a TPM Owner does disable all
321 current delegations, including exported rows, and requires the new TPM Owner to re-
322 enable the delegations in the table. The table entry values like trusted process
323 identification and delegations to that process are not effected by a change in owner. THE
324 AUTHDATA VALUES DO NOT SURVIVE THE OWNERSHIP CHANGE.” Question: If this is
325 true, no delegations work after a change of owner. How does the new owner set new
326 AuthData values?
- 327 a. The simple way of handling this is to get AdminMonitor to own backing up
328 delegations at first owner install and then be run by new owner, and AdminMonitor
329 uses FillTable, to handle “Owner migration.” Or, for another use option, is for second
330 owner to pick-up PCR-ID’s and delegations bits from previous owner – what is the
331 most straight-forward way to do this?
- 332 64. In section 3.1 (Delegate Definitions bit map table), several commands that do not require
333 owner authorization are in the table and can be delegated: TPM_SetTempDeactivated (bit
334 15), TPM_ReadPubek (bit 7), and TPM_LoadManuMaintPub (bit 3), Why?
- 335 65. In section 3.3 it is stated, “The Family ID resets to NULL on each change of TPM Owner.”
336 This invalidates all delegations. Is this what we want?
- 337 a. You don’t have to blow away FamilyID to blow away the blobs, because key is gone.
338 So this is not required – can eliminate these actions.
- 339 66. In section 3.12, why is TPM_DELEGATE_LABEL included in the table?
- 340 67. In section 4.2 (TPM_DelTable_FillTable), is it okay to delete requirement that delegate
341 table be empty? Also, in Action 14, now that we have both persistent and volatile
342 tableAdmin flags, should this command set volatile tableAdmin flag to FALSE upon
343 completion?
- 344 a. The delegate table does not need to be empty to use the TPM_DelTable_FillTable
345 command, Also, a paragraph has been added to Informative comment for
346 TPM_DelTable_FillTable that points out usefulness of immediately following
347 TPM_DelTable_FillTable with TPM_Delegate_TempSetAdmin, to stop table
348 administration in the current boot cycle.
- 349 68. In section 4.15 (TPM_FamTable_IncrementCount), why does this command require
350 TPMOwner authorization, as currently documented in section 4.15?
- 351 a. IncrementCount is gated by tableAdmin, which seems sufficient, and use of
352 ownerauth makes it difficult to automatically verify a table using a CDROM.
- 353 69. In section 4.3 (TPM_DelTable_FillTableOwner), in the Action 3d, use OTP[80] = MFG(x1)
354 in place of oneTimePad[n] = SHA1(x1 || seed[n]))?,
- 355 a. yes.
- 356 70. In section 4.9 (TPM_DelTable_SetRow), is invalidateRow input parameter really needed?

- 357 a. It is only used in action 5. Couldn't action 5 simply read "Set N1 -> familyID =
358 NULL"?
- 359 71. There is no easy way to generate a blob that can be used to delegate migration authority
360 for a user key.
- 361 a. This is because the TPM does not store the migration authority on the chip as the
362 migration command involves an encrypted key, not a loaded one. One could invent a
363 'CreateMigrationDelegationBlob' that took the encrypted key as input and generated
364 the encrypted delegation blob as output, but it would not be pretty. Sorry Dave.
- 365 72. If a delegate row in NV memory (nominally 4 rows) is to refer to a user key (instead of
366 owner auth), then it needs to include a hash of the public key. It could be that the NV
367 table is restricted to owner auth delegations, this would save 80 bytes of NV store and
368 also simplify the LoadBlob command.
- 369 a. Maybe would simplify other things. I would definitely NOT permit user keys in the
370 table to be run with the legacy OSAP and OIAP ordinals.
- 371 73. A few more GetCapability values are also required, the usual constants that we
372 discussed and also the two readTable caps.
- 373 74. TBD Verify that Delegate Table Management commands (see section 2.8) cover all the
374 functionality of obsolete or updated commands.
- 375 75. Redefine bits 16 and above in Delegation Definitions table (section 3.1). In particular,
376 can new command set (with TPM_FAMILY_OPERATION options as defined in section
377 3.20) be delegated individually and appropriately. Also, how many user key authorized
378 commands will be delegated?
- 379 76. Is new TPM_FAMILY_FLAGS field of family table (defined in section 3.5) sensitive data?
- 380 77. DSAP informative comment needs to be completed (section 4.1). In particular, does the
381 statement "The DSAP command works like OSAP except it takes an encrypted blob – an
382 encrypted delegate table row -- as input" sufficient? Or do some particular differences
383 between DSAP and OSAP have to be pointed out in this informative comment??
- 384 78. The TPM_Delegate_LoadBlob[Owner] commands cannot be used to load key delegation
385 blobs into the TPM. Is another ordinal required to do that?
- 386 79. Is it okay for TPM_Delegate_LoadBlob[Owner] commands to ignore enable/disable
387 use/admin flags in family table rows?
- 388 80. Is it wise to delegate TPM_DeTable_ConvertBlob command (defined in section 4.11)?
389 Does current definition of this command support section 2.7 scenarios?
- 390 81. Is there a privacy problem with DeTable_ReadRow since the contents may not be
391 identical from TPM to TPM?
- 392 82. Are DSAP sessions being pooled with the other sessions? if so, can one save/load them
393 by context functions? if not, then there should be a restriction in saveContext.
- 394 a. DSAP are "normal" authorization sessions and would save/load with OIAP and OSAP
395 sessions

396 2.2.2 NV Questions

- 397 83. You would set this by using a new ordinal that is unauthorized and only turns the flag
398 on to lock everything. Yet another ordinal? Do we need it? Is this an important
399 functionality for the uses we see?
- 400 a. Yes this allows us to have "close" to writeonce functionality. What the functionality
401 would be is that the RTM would assure that the proper information is present in the
402 TPM and then "lock" the area. One could create this functionality by having the RTM
403 change the authorization each time but then you would need to eat more NV store so
404 save the sealed AuthData value. I think that is easier to have an ordinal than eat the
405 NV space and require a much more complex programming model.
- 406 84. Is it OK to have an element partially written?
- 407 a. Given that we have chunks there has to be a mechanism to allow partial writes.
- 408 85. If an element is partially written, how does a caller know that more needs to be written?
- 409 a. I would say the use model that provides the ability to write – read, in a loop is just
410 not supported. Get it all written and then do the read.
- 411 86. Usage of the lock bit: as you wrote, the RTM would assure that the proper information is
412 present in the TPM and then "lock" the area. so why in action #4 we should also check
413 bWritten when the lock bit is set? should be as action #3b of TPM_NV_DefineSpace, if
414 lock is set - return error
- 415 a. [Grawrock, David] Not quite, the use model I was trying to create was the one where
416 the TPM was locked and the user was attempting to add a new area. If the locked bit
417 doesn't allow for writing once to a new area, one must reboot to perform the write
418 and also tell the RTM what the value to write must be. So this allows the creator of
419 an area to write it once and then it flows with the locked bit.
- 420 87. Can you delete a NV value with only physical presence?
- 421 a. [Grawrock, David] You can't delete with physical presence, you must use owner
422 authorization. This I think is a reasonable restriction to avoid burn problems.
- 423 88. Why is there no check on the writes for a TPM Owner?
- 424 a. The check for an owner occurred during the TPM_NV_DefineSpace. It is imperative
425 that the TPM_NV_DefineSpace set in place the appropriate restrictions to limit the
426 potential for attacks on the NV storage area.
- 427 89. Description of maxNVBufSize is confusing to me. Why is this value related to the input
428 size? And since there is no longer any 'written' bits, why is there a maximum area size at
429 all?
- 430 a. [Grawrock, David] This is a fixed size and set by the TPM manufacturer. I would see
431 values like the input buffer, transport sessions etc all coming up with the max size
432 the TPM can handle. This does NOT indicate what is available on the TPM right now.
433 The TPM could have 4k of space but max size would be 782 and would always report
434 that number. If the available space fell to 20 bytes this value would still be 782.
- 435 90. If the storage area is an opaque area to the TPM (as described), then how does the TPM
436 know what PCR registers have been used to seal a blob?

- 437 a. The VALUES of the area are opaque, the attributes to control access are not. So if the
438 attributes indicate that PCR restrictions are in place the TPM keeps those PCR values
439 as part of the index attributes. This in reality seals the value as there is no need for
440 tpmProof since the value never leaves the TPM.

441 3. Protection

442 3.1 Introduction

443 **Start of informative comment**

444 The Protection Profile in the Conformance part of the specification defines the threats that
445 are resisted by a platform. This section, “Protection,” describes the properties of selected
446 capabilities and selected data locations within a TPM that has a Protection Profile and has
447 not been modified by physical means.

448 This section introduces the concept of protected capabilities and the concept of shielded
449 locations for data. The ordinal set defined in part II and III is the set of protected
450 capabilities. The data structures in part II define the shielded locations.

451 • A protected capability is one whose correct operation is necessary in order for the
452 operation of the TCG Subsystem to be trusted.

453 • A shielded location is an area where data is protected against interference and prying,
454 independent of its form.

455 This specification uses the concept of protected capabilities so as to distinguish platform
456 capabilities that must be trustworthy. Trust in the TPM depends critically on the protected
457 capabilities. Platform capabilities that are not protected capabilities must (of course) work
458 properly if the TCG Subsystem is to function properly.

459 This specification uses the concept of shielded locations, rather than the concept of
460 “shielded data.” While the concept of shielded data is intuitive, it is extraordinarily difficult
461 to define because of the imprecise meaning of the word “data.” For example, consider data
462 that is produced in a safe location and then moved into ordinary storage. It is the same data
463 in both locations, but in one it is shielded data and in the other it is not. Also, data may not
464 always exist in the same form. For example, it may exist as vulnerable plaintext, but also
465 may sometimes be transformed into a logically protected form. This data continues to exist,
466 but doesn't always need to be shielded data - the vulnerable form needs to be shielded data,
467 but the logically protected form does not. If a specific form of data requires protection
468 against interference or prying, it is therefore necessary to say “if the data-D exists, it must
469 exist only in a shielded location.” A more concise expression is “the data-D must be extant
470 only in a shielded location.”

471 Hence, if trust in the TCG Subsystem depends critically on access to certain data, that data
472 should be extant only in a shielded location and accessible only to protected capabilities.
473 When not in use, such data could be erased after conversion (using a protected capability)
474 into another data structure. Unless the other data structure was defined as one that must
475 be held in a shielded location, it need not be held in a shielded location.

476 **End of informative comment**

477 1. The data structures described in part II of the TPM specifications MUST NOT be
478 instantiated in a TPM, except as data in TPM-shielded-locations.

479 2. The ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications MUST NOT be
480 instantiated in a TPM, except as TPM-protected-capabilities.

481 3. Functions MUST NOT be instantiated in a TPM as TPM-protected-capabilities if they do
482 not appear in the ordinal set defined in part II and III of the TPM specifications.

483 3.2 Threat

484 Start of informative comment

485 This section, “Threat,” defines the scope of the threats that must be considered when
486 considering whether a platform facilitates subversion of capabilities and data in a platform.

487 The design and implementation of a platform determines the extent to which the platform
488 facilitates subversion of capabilities and data within that platform. It is necessary to define
489 the attacks that must be resisted by TPM-shielded locations and TPM-protected capabilities
490 in that platform.

491 The TCG specifications define all attacks that are resisted by the TPM. These attacks must
492 be considered when determining whether the integrity of TPM-protected capabilities and
493 data in TPM-shielded locations can be damaged. These attacks must be considered when
494 determining whether there is a backdoor method of obtaining access to TPM-protected
495 capabilities and data in TPM-shielded locations. These attacks must be considered when
496 determining whether TPM-protected capabilities have undesirable side effects.

497 End of informative comment

- 498 1. For the purposes of the “Protection” section of the specification, the threats that MUST
499 be considered when determining whether the TPM facilitates subversion of TPM-
500 protected-capabilities or data in TPM-shielded-locations SHALL include
- 501 a. The methods inherent in physical attacks that fail if the TPM complies with the
502 “physical protection” requirements specified by TCG
 - 503 b. All methods that require execution of instructions in a computing engine in the
504 platform

505 3.3 Protection of functions

506 Start of informative comment

507 A TPM-protected-capability must be used to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Other
508 methods must not be allowed to modify TPM-protected capabilities. Otherwise, the integrity
509 of TPM-protected capabilities is unknown.

510 End of informative comment

- 511 1. A TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the alteration of TPM-protected-capabilities, except by TPM-
512 protected capabilities.

513 3.4 Protection of information

514 Start of informative comment

515 TPM-protected capabilities must provide the only means from outside the TPM to access
516 information represented by data in TPM-shielded-locations. Otherwise, a rogue can reveal
517 data in TPM-shielded-locations, or create a derivative of data from TPM-shielded-locations
518 (in a way that maintains some or all of the information content of the data) and reveal the
519 derivative.

520 End of informative comment

- 521 1. A TPM SHALL NOT export data that is dependent upon data structures described in part
522 II of the TPM specifications, other than via a TPM-Protected-Capability.

523 3.5 Side effects

524 **Start of informative comment**

525 An implementation of a TPM-protected capability must not disclose the contents of TPM-
526 shielded locations. The only exceptions are when such disclosure is inherent in the
527 definition of the capability or in the methods used by the capability. For example, a
528 capability might be designed specifically to reveal hidden data or might use cryptography
529 and hence always be vulnerable to cryptanalysis. In such cases, some disclosure or risk of
530 disclosure is inherent and cannot be avoided. Other forms of disclosure (by side effects, for
531 example) must always be avoided.

532 **End of informative comment**

- 533 1. The implementation of a TPM-protected-capability in a TPM SHALL NOT facilitate the
534 disclosure or the exposure of information represented by data in TPM-shielded-
535 locations, except by means unavoidably inherent in the TPM definition.

536 3.6 Exceptions and clarifications

537 **Start of informative comment**

538 These exceptions to the blanket statements in the generic “protection” requirements (above)
539 are fully compatible with the intended effect of those statements. These exceptions affect
540 TCG-data that is available as plain-text outside the TPM and TCG-data that can be used
541 without violating security or privacy. These exceptions are valuable because they approve
542 use of TPM resources by vendor-specific commands in particular circumstances.

543 These clarifications to the blanket statements of the generic “protection” requirements
544 (above) do not materially change the effect of those statements, but serve to approve specific
545 legitimate interpretations of the requirements.

546 **End of informative comment**

- 547 1. A Shielded Location is a place (memory, register, etc.) where data is protected against
548 interference and exposure, independent of its form
- 549 2. A TPM-Protected-Capability is an operation defined in and restricted to those identified
550 in part II and III of the TPM specifications.
- 551 3. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use the standard TCG owner/operator
552 authorization mechanism
- 553 4. A vendor specific command or capability MAY utilize a TPM_PUBKEY structure stored on
554 the TPM so long as the usage of that TPM_PUBKEY structure is authorized using the
555 standard TCG authorization mechanism.
- 556 5. A vendor specific command or capability MAY use a sequence of standard TCG
557 commands. The command MUST propagate the locality used for the call to the used
558 TCG commands or capabilities, or set locality to 0.
- 559 6. A vendor specific command or capability that takes advantage of exceptions and
560 clarifications to the “protection” requirements MUST be defined as part of the security
561 target of the TPM. Such a vendor specific command or capability MUST be evaluated to
562 meet the Platform Specific TPM and System Security Targets.

563 7. If a TPM employs vendor-specific cipher-text that is protected against subversion to the
564 same or greater extent as internal TPM-resources stored outside the TPM with TCG-
565 defined methods, that vendor-specific cipher-text does not necessarily require protection
566 from physical attack. If a TPM location stores only vendor-specific cipher-text that does
567 not require protection from physical attack, that location can be ignored when
568 determining whether the TPM complies with the "physical protection" requirements
569 specified by TCG.

570 4. TPM Architecture

571 4.1 Interoperability

572 Start of informative comment

573 The TPM must support a minimum set of algorithms and operations to meet TCG
574 specifications.

575 Algorithms

576 RSA, SHA-1, HMAC

577 The algorithms and protocols are the minimum that the TPM must support. Additional
578 algorithms and protocols may be available to the TPM. All algorithms and protocols
579 available in the TPM must be included in the TPM and platform credential.

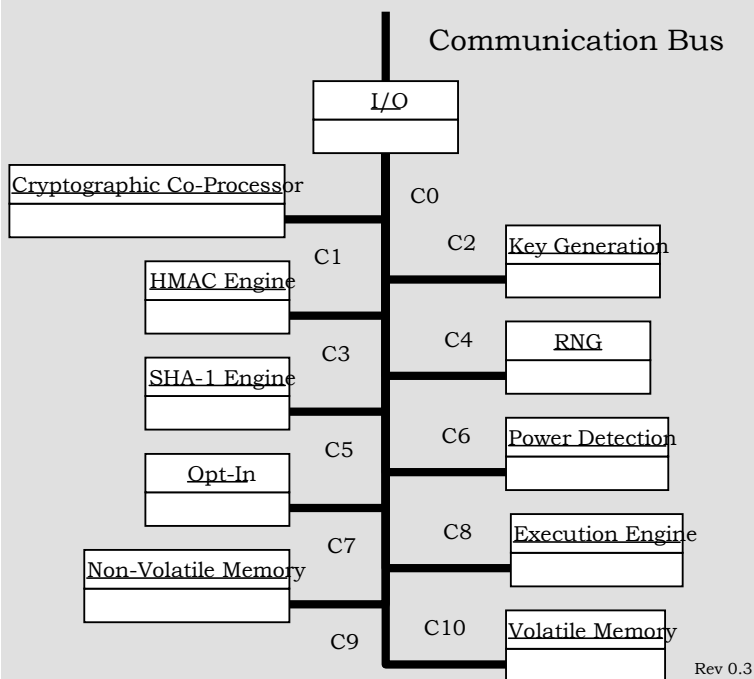
580 The reason to specify these algorithms is two fold. The first is to know and understand the
581 security properties of selected algorithms; identify appropriate key sizes and ensure
582 appropriate use in protocols. The second reason is to define a base level of algorithms for
583 interoperability.

584 End of informative comment

585 4.2 Components

586 Start of informative comment

587 The following is a block diagram Figure 4:a shows the major components of a TPM.



588

589 Figure 4:a - TPM Component Architecture

590 **End of informative comment**

591 **4.2.1 Input and Output**

592 **Start of informative comment**

593 The I/O component, Figure 4:a C0, manages information flow over the communications
594 bus. It performs protocol encoding/decoding suitable for communication over external and
595 internal buses. It routes messages to appropriate components. The I/O component enforces
596 access policies associated with the Opt-In component as well as other TPM functions
597 requiring access control.

598 The main specification does not require a specific I/O bus. Issues around a particular I/O
599 bus are the purview of a platform specific specification.

600 **End of informative comment**

601 **4.2.2 Cryptographic Co-Processor**

602 **Start of informative comment**

603 The cryptographic co-processor, Figure 4:a C1, implements cryptographic operations within
604 the TPM. The TPM employs conventional cryptographic operations in conventional ways.
605 Those operations include the following:

606 Asymmetric key generation (RSA)

607 Asymmetric encryption/decryption (RSA)

608 Hashing (SHA-1)

609 Random number generation (RNG)

610 The TPM uses these capabilities to perform generation of random data, generation of
611 asymmetric keys, signing and confidentiality of stored data.

612 The TPM may symmetric encryption for internal TPM use but does not expose any
613 symmetric algorithm functions to general users of the TPM.

614 The TPM may implement additional asymmetric algorithms. TPM devices that implement
615 different algorithms may have different algorithms perform the signing and wrapping.

616 **End of informative comment**

- 617 1. The TPM MAY implement other asymmetric algorithms such as DSA or elliptic curve.
 - 618 a. These algorithms may be in use for wrapping, signatures and other operations. There
619 is no guarantee that these keys can migrate to other TPM devices or that other TPM
620 devices will accept signatures from these additional algorithms.
- 621 2. All Storage keys MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key or greater. The
622 TPM SHALL NOT load a Storage key whose strength less than that of a 2048 bits RSA
623 key.
- 624 3. All AIK MUST be of strength equivalent to a 2048 bits RSA key, or greater.

625 **4.2.2.1 RSA Engine**

626 **Start of informative comment**

627 The RSA asymmetric algorithm is used for digital signatures and for encryption.
628 For RSA keys the PKCS #1 standard provides the implementation details for digital
629 signature, encryption and data formats.

630 There is no requirement concerning how the RSA algorithm is to be implemented. TPM
631 manufacturers may use Chinese Remainder Theorem (CRT) implementations or any other
632 method. Designers should review P1363 for guidance on RSA implementations.

633 **End of informative comment**

- 634 1. The TPM MUST support RSA.
- 635 2. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for encryption and digital signatures.
- 636 3. The TPM MUST support key sizes of 512, 768, 1024, and 2048 bits. The TPM MAY
637 support other key sizes.
 - 638 a. The minimum RECOMMENDED key size is 2048 bits.
- 639 4. The RSA public exponent MUST be e , where $e = 2^{16} + 1$.
- 640 5. TPM devices that use CRT as the RSA implementation MUST provide protection and
641 detection of failures during the CRT process to avoid attacks on the private key.

642 **4.2.2.2 Signature Operations**

643 **Start of informative comment**

644 The TPM performs signatures on both internal items and on requested external blobs. The
645 rules for signatures apply to both operations.

646 **End of informative comment**

- 647 1. The TPM MUST use the RSA algorithm for signature operations where signed data is
648 verified by entities other than the TPM that performed the sign operation.
- 649 2. The TPM MAY use other asymmetric algorithms for signatures; however, there is no
650 requirement that other TPM devices either accept or verify those signatures.
- 651 3. The TPM MUST use P1363 for the format and design of the signature output.

652 **4.2.2.3 Symmetric Encryption Engine**

653 **Start of informative comment**

654 The TPM uses symmetric encryption to encrypt authentication information, provide
655 confidentiality in transport sessions and provide internal encryption of blobs stored off of
656 the TPM.

657 For authentication and transport sessions, the mechanism is a Vernam one-time-pad with
658 XOR. The mechanism to generate the one-time-pad is MGF1 and the nonces from the
659 session protocol. When encrypting authorization data, the authorization data and the
660 nonces are the same size, 20 bytes, so a direct XOR is possible.

661 For transport sessions the size of data is larger than the nonces so there needs to be a
662 mechanism to expand the entropy to the size of the data. The mechanism to expand the
663 entropy is the MGF1 function from PKCS#1. This function provides a known mechanism
664 that does not lower the entropy of the nonces.

665 Internal protection of information can use any symmetric algorithm that the TPM designer
666 feels provides the proper level of protection.

667 The TPM does not expose any of the symmetric operations for general message encryption.

668 **End of informative comment**

669 4.2.2.4 Using Keys

670 **Start of Informative comments:**

671 Keys can be symmetric or asymmetric.

672 As the TPM does not have an exposed symmetric algorithm, the TPM is only a generator,
673 storage device and protector of symmetric keys. Generation of the symmetric key would use
674 the TPM RNG. Storage and protection would be provided by the BIND and SEAL capabilities
675 of the TPM. If the caller wants to ensure that the release of a symmetric key is not exposed
676 after UNBIND/UNSEAL on delivery to the caller, the caller should use a transport session
677 with confidentiality set.

678 For asymmetric algorithms, the TPM generates and operates on RSA keys. The keys can be
679 held only by the TPM or in conjunction with the caller of the TPM. If the private portion of a
680 key is in use outside of the TPM it is the responsibility of the caller and user of that key to
681 ensure the protections of the key.

682 The TPM has provisions to indicate if a key is held exclusively for the TPM or can be shared
683 with entities off of the TPM.

684 **End of informative comments.**

- 685 1. A secret key is a key that is a private asymmetric key or a symmetric key.
- 686 2. Data SHOULD NOT be used as a secret key by a TCG protected capability unless that
687 data has been extant only in a shielded location.
- 688 3. A key generated by a TCG protected capability SHALL NOT be used as a secret key
689 unless that key has been extant only in a shielded location.
- 690 4. A secret key obtained by a TCG protected capability from a Protected Storage blob
691 SHALL be extant only in a shielded location.

692 4.2.3 Key Generation

693 **Start of informative comment**

694 The Key Generation component, Figure 4:a C2, creates RSA key pairs and symmetric keys.
695 TCG places no minimum requirements on key generation times for asymmetric or
696 symmetric keys.

697 **End of informative comment**

698 4.2.3.1 Asymmetric – RSA

699 The TPM MUST generate asymmetric key pairs. The generate function is a protected
700 capability and the private key is held in a shielded location. The implementation of the
701 generate function MUST be in accordance with P1363.

702 The prime-number testing for the RSA algorithm MUST use the definitions of P1363. If
703 additional asymmetric algorithms are available, they MUST use the definitions from P1363
704 for the underlying basis of the asymmetric key (for example, elliptic curve fitting).

705 **4.2.3.2 Nonce Creation**

706 The creation of all nonce values MUST use the next n bits from the TPM RNG.

707 **4.2.4 HMAC Engine**

708 **Start of informative comment**

709 The HMAC engine, Figure 4:a C3, provides two pieces of information to the TPM: proof of
710 knowledge of the AuthData and proof that the request arriving is authorized and has no
711 modifications made to the command in transit.

712 The HMAC definition is for the HMAC calculation only. It does not specify the order or
713 mechanism that transports the data from caller to actual TPM.

714 The creation of the HMAC is order dependent. Each command has specific items that are
715 portions of the HMAC calculation. The actual calculation starts with the definition from
716 RFC 2104.

717 RFC 2104 requires the selection of two parameters to properly define the HMAC in use.
718 These values are the key length and the block size. This specification will use a key length
719 of 20 bytes and a block size of 64 bytes. These values are known in the RFC as K for the key
720 length and B as the block size.

721 The basic construct is

722 $H(K \text{ XOR opad}, H(K \text{ XOR ipad}, \text{text}))$

723 where

724 H = the SHA1 hash operation

725 K = the key or the AuthData

726 XOR = the xor operation

727 opad = the byte 0x5C repeated B times

728 B = the block length

729 ipad = the byte 0x36 repeated B times

730 text = the message information and any parameters from the command

731 **End of informative comment**

732 The TPM MUST support the calculation of an HMAC according to RFC 2104.

733 The size of the key (K in RFC 2104) MUST be 20 bytes. The block size (B in RFC 2104)
734 MUST be 64 bytes.

735 The order of the parameters is critical to the TPM's ability to recreate the HMAC. Not all of
736 the fields are sent on the wire for each command for instance only one of the nonce values
737 travels on the wire. Each command interface definition indicates what parameters are
738 involved in the HMAC calculation.

739 4.2.5 Random Number Generator

740 **Start of informative comment**

741 The Random Number Generator (RNG) component, Figure 6:a C4 is the source of
742 randomness in the TPM. The TPM uses these random values for nonces, key generation,
743 and randomness in signatures.

744 The RNG consists of a state-machine that accepts and mixes unpredictable data and a post-
745 processor that has a one-way function (e.g. SHA-1). The idea behind the design is that a
746 TPM can be good source of randomness without having to require a genuine source of
747 hardware entropy.

748 The state-machine can have a non-volatile state initialized with unpredictable random data
749 during TPM manufacturing before delivery of the TPM to the customers. The state-machine
750 can accept, at any time, further (unpredictable) data, or entropy, to salt the random
751 number. Such data comes from hardware or software sources – for example; from thermal
752 noise, or by monitoring random keyboard strokes or mouse movements. The RNG requires a
753 reseeding after each reset of the TPM. A true hardware source of entropy is likely to supply
754 entropy at a higher baud rate than a software source.

755 When adding entropy to the state-machine the process must ensure that after the addition,
756 no outside source can gain any visibility into the new state of the state-machine. Neither
757 the Owner of the TPM, nor the manufacturer of the TPM can deduce the state of the state-
758 machine after shipment of the TPM. The RNG post-processor condenses the output of the
759 state-machine into data that has sufficient and uniform entropy. The one-way function
760 should use more bits of input data than it produces as output.

761 Our definition of the RNG allows implementation of a Pseudo Random Number Generator
762 (PRNG) algorithm. However, on devices where a hardware source of entropy is available, a
763 PRNG need not be implemented. This specification refers to both RNG and PRNG
764 implementations as the RNG mechanism. There is no need to distinguish between the two
765 at the TCG specification level.

766 The TPM should be able to provide 32 bytes of randomness on each call. Larger requests
767 may fail with not enough randomness being available.

768 **End of informative comment**

- 769 1. The RNG for the TPM will consist of the following components:
- 770 a. Entropy source and collector
 - 771 b. State register
 - 772 c. Mixing function
- 773 2. The RNG capability is a TPM-protected capability with no access control.
- 774 3. The RNG output may or may not be shielded data. When the data is for internal use by
775 the TPM (e.g., asymmetric key generation) the data **MUST** be held in a shielded location.
776 When the data is for use by the TSS or another external caller, the data is not shielded.

777 4.2.5.1 Entropy Source and Collector

778 **Start of informative comment**

779 The entropy source is the process or processes that provide entropy. These types of sources
780 could include noise, clock variations, air movement, and other types of events.

781 The entropy collector is the process that collects the entropy, removes bias, and smoothes
782 the output. The collector differs from the mixing function in that the collector may have
783 special code to handle any bias or skewing of the raw entropy data. For instance, if the
784 entropy source has a bias of creating 60 percent 1s and only 40 percent 0s, then the
785 collector design takes that bias into account before sending the information to the state
786 register.

787 **End of informative comment**

- 788 1. The entropy source **MUST** provide entropy to the state register in a manner that provides
789 entropy that is not visible to an outside process.
- 790 a. For compliance purposes, the entropy source **MAY** be outside of the TPM; however,
791 attention **MUST** be paid to the reporting mechanism.
- 792 2. The entropy source **MUST** provide the information only to the state register.
- 793 a. The entropy source may provide information that has a bias, so the entropy collector
794 must remove the bias before updating the state register. The bias removal could use
795 the mixing function or a function specifically designed to handle the bias of the
796 entropy source.
- 797 b. The entropy source can be a single device (such as hardware noise) or a combination
798 of events (such as disk timings). It is the responsibility of the entropy collector to
799 update the state register whenever the collector has additional entropy.

800 **4.2.5.2 State Register**

801 **Start of informative comment**

802 The state register implementation may use two registers: a non-volatile register rngState
803 and a volatile register. The TPM loads the volatile register from the non-volatile register on
804 startup. Each subsequent change to the state register from either the entropy source or the
805 mixing function affects the volatile state register. The TPM saves the current value of the
806 volatile state register to the non-volatile register on TPM power-down. The TPM may update
807 the non-volatile register at any other time. The reasons for using two registers are:

808 To handle an implementation in which the non-volatile register is in a flash device;

809 To avoid overuse of the flash, as the number of writes to a flash device are limited.

810 **End of informative comment**

- 811 1. The state register is in a TPM shielded-location.
- 812 a. The state register **MUST** be non-volatile.
- 813 b. The update function to the state register is a TPM protected-capability.
- 814 c. The primary input to the update function **SHOULD** be the entropy collector.
- 815 2. If the current value of the state register is unknown, calls made to the update function
816 with known data **MUST NOT** result in the state register ending up in a state that an
817 attacker could know.

- 818 a. This requirement implies that the addition of known data MUST NOT result in a
819 decrease in the entropy of the state register.
- 820 3. The TPM MUST NOT export the state register.

821 4.2.5.3 Mixing Function

822 **Start of informative comment**

823 The mixing function takes the state register and produces output. The mixing function is a
824 TPM protected-capability. The mixing function takes the value from a state register and
825 creates the RNG output. If the entropy source has a bias, then the collector takes that bias
826 into account before sending the information to the state register.

827 **End of informative comment**

- 828 1. Each use of the mixing function MUST affect the state register.
- 829 a. This requirement is to affect the volatile register and does not need to affect the non-
830 volatile state register.

831 4.2.5.4 RNG Reset

832 **Start of informative comment**

833 The resetting of the RNG occurs at least in response to a loss of power to the device.
834 These tests prove only that the RNG is still operating properly; they do not prove how much
835 entropy is in the state register. This is why the self-test checks only after the load of
836 previous state and may occur before the addition of more entropy.

837 **End of informative comment**

- 838 1. The RNG MUST NOT output any bits after a system reset until the following occurs:
- 839 a. The entropy collector performs an update on the state register. This does not include
840 the adding of the previous state but requires at least one bit of entropy.
- 841 b. The mixing function performs a self-test. This self-test MUST occur after the loading
842 of the previous state. It MAY occur before the entropy collector performs the first
843 update.

844 4.2.6 SHA-1 Engine

845 **Start of informative comment**

846 The SHA-1, Figure 4:a C5, hash capability is primarily used by the TPM, as it is a trusted
847 implementation of a hash algorithm. The hash interfaces are exposed outside the TPM to
848 support Measurement taking during platform boot phases and to allow environments that
849 have limited capabilities access to a hash functions. The TPM is not a cryptographic
850 accelerator. TCG does not specify minimum throughput requirements for TPM hash
851 services.

852 **End of informative comment**

- 853 1. The TPM MUST implement the SHA-1 hash algorithm as defined by FIPS-180-1.
- 854 2. The output of SHA-1 is 160 bits and all areas that expect a hash value are REQUIRED
855 to support the full 160 bits.

- 856 3. The only commands that SHALL be presented to the TPM in-between a TPM_SHA1Start
- 857 command and a TPM_SHA1Complete command SHALL be a variable number (possibly
- 858 0) of TPM_SHA1Update commands.
- 859 4. Throughout all parts of the specification the characters x1 || x2 imply the
- 860 concatenation of x1 and x2

4.2.7 Power Detection

Start of informative comment

The power detection component, Figure 4:a C6, manages the TPM power states in conjunction with platform power states. TCG requires that the TPM be notified of all power state changes.

Power detection also supports physical presence assertions. The TPM may restrict command-execution during periods when the operation of the platform is physically constrained. In a PC, operational constraints occur during the power-on self-test (POST) and require Operator input via the keyboard. The TPM might allow access to certain commands while in a constrained execution mode or boot state. At some critical point in the POST process, the TPM may be notified of state changes that affect TPM command processing modes.

End of informative comment

4.2.8 Opt-In

Start of informative comment

The Opt-In component, Figure 4:a C7, provides mechanisms and protections to allow the TPM to be turned on/off, enabled/disabled, activated/deactivated.. The Opt-In component maintains the state of persistent and volatile flags and enforces the semantics associated with these flags.

The setting of flags requires either authorization by the TPM Owner or the assertion of physical presence at the platform. The platform’s manufacturer determines the techniques used to represent physical-presence. The guiding principle is that no remote entity should be able to change TPM status without either knowledge of the TPM Owner or the Operator is physically present at the platform. Physical presence may be asserted during a period when platform operation is constrained such as power-up.

Non-Volatile Flags:

PhysicalPresenceLifetimeLock

PhysicalPresenceHWEnable

PhysicalPresenceCMDEnable

Volatile Flags:

PhysicalPresenceV

The following truth table explains the conditions in which the PhysicalPresenceV flag may be altered:

Persistent / Volatile	P	P	P	V	
-----------------------	---	---	---	---	--

Control Flags	PhysicalPresenceLifetimeLock	PhysicalPresenceHWEEnable	PhysicalPresenceCMDEnable	PhysicalPresenceV	
Volatile Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	-	F	F	-	No access to PhysicalPresenceV flag.
	-	F	T	T	
	-	-	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
	-	T	-	-	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal enabled.
	-	T	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command enabled.
Persistent Access Semantics to Physical Presence Flag	T	F	F	-	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag permanently disabled.
	T	F	T	T	
	T	F	T	F	Exclusive access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.
	T	T	F	-	Exclusive access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal permanently enabled.
	T	T	T	F	Access to PhysicalPresenceV flag through hardware signal or TCS_PhysicalPresence command permanently enabled.

894 Table 4:a - Physical Presence Semantics

895 TCG also recognizes the concept of unambiguous physical presence. Conceptually, the use
896 of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the Operator has higher
897 precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Unambiguous physical presence may be
898 used to override physicalPresenceV flag value under conditions specified by platform
899 specific design considerations.

900 Additional details relating to physical presence can be found in sections on Volatile and
901 Non-volatile memory.

902 **End of informative comment**

903 4.2.9 Execution Engine

904 **Start of informative comment**

905 The execution engine, Figure 4:a C8, runs program code to execute the TPM commands
906 received from the I/O port. The execution engine is a vital component in ensuring that
907 operations are properly segregated and shield locations are protected.

908 **End of informative comment**

909 4.2.10 Non-Volatile Memory

910 **Start of informative comment**

911 Non-volatile memory component, Figure 4:a C9, is used to store persistent identity and
912 state associated with the TPM. The NV area has set items (like the EK) and also is available
913 for allocation and use by entities authorized by the TPM Owner.

914 The TPM designer should consider the use model of the TPM and if the use of NV storage is
915 a concern. NV storage does have a limited life and using the NV storage in a high volume
916 use model may prematurely wear out the TPM.

917 **End of informative comment**

918 **4.3 Data Integrity Register (DIR)**

919 **Start of informative comment**

920 The DIR were a version 1.1 function. They provided a place to store information using the
921 TPM NV storage.

922 In 1.2 the DIR are deprecated and the use of the DIR should move to the general purpose
923 NV storage area.

924 The TPM must still support the functionality of the DIR register in the NV storage area.

925 **End of informative comment**

- 926 1. A TPM MUST provide one Data Integrity Register (DIR)
 - 927 a. The TPM DIR commands are deprecated in 1.2
 - 928 b. The TPM MUST reserve the space for one DIR in the NV storage area
 - 929 c. The TPM MAY have more than 1 DIR.
- 930 2. The DIR MUST be 160-bit values and MUST be held in TPM shielded-locations.
- 931 3. The DIR MUST be non-volatile (values are maintained during the power-off state).
 - 932 a. A TPM implementation need not provide the same number of DIRs as PCRs.

933 **4.4 Platform Configuration Register (PCR)**

934 **Start of informative comment**

935 A Platform Configuration Register (PCR) is a 160-bit storage location for discrete integrity
936 measurements. There are a minimum of 16 PCR registers. All PCR registers are shielded-
937 locations and are inside of the TPM. The decision of whether a PCR contains a standard
938 measurement or if the PCR is available for general use is deferred to the platform specific
939 specification.

940 A large number of integrity metrics may be measured in a platform, and a particular
941 integrity metric may change with time and a new value may need to be stored. It is difficult
942 to authenticate the source of measurement of integrity metrics, and as a result a new value
943 of an integrity metric cannot be permitted to simply overwrite an existing value. (A rogue
944 could erase an existing value that indicates subversion and replace it with a benign value.)
945 Thus, if values of integrity metrics are individually stored, and updates of integrity metrics
946 must be individually stored, it is difficult to place an upper bound on the size of memory
947 that is required to store integrity metrics.

948 The PCR is designed to hold an unlimited number of measurements in the register. It does
949 this by using a cryptographic hash and hashing all updates to a PCR. The pseudo code for
950 this is:

951 $PCR_i \text{ New} = \text{HASH} (PCR_i \text{ Old value} \parallel \text{value to add})$

952 There are two salient properties of cryptographic hash that relate to PCR construction.
953 Ordering – meaning updates to PCRs are not commutative. For example, measuring (A then
954 B) is not the same as measuring (B then A).

955 The other hash property is one-way-ness. This property means it should be computationally
956 infeasible for an attacker to determine the input message given a PCR value. Furthermore,
957 subsequent updates to a PCR cannot be determined without knowledge of the previous PCR
958 values or all previous input messages provided to a PCR register since the last reset.

959 **End of informative comment**

- 960 1. The PCR MUST be a 160-bit field that holds a cumulatively updated hash value
- 961 2. The PCR MUST have a status field associated with it
- 962 3. The PCR MUST be in the RTS and should be in volatile storage
- 963 4. The PCR MUST allow for an unlimited number of measurements to be stored in the PCR
- 964 5. The PCR MUST preserve the ordering of measurements presented to it
- 965 6. A PCR MUST be set to the default value as specified by the PCRReset attribute
- 966 7. A TPM implementation MUST provide 16 or more independent PCRs. These PCRs are
967 identified by index and MUST be numbered from 0 (that is, PCR0 through PCR15 are
968 required for TCG compliance). Vendors MAY implement more registers for general-
969 purpose use. Extra registers MUST be numbered contiguously from 16 up to max – 1,
970 where max is the maximum offered by the TPM.
- 971 8. The TCG-protected capabilities that expose and modify the PCRs use a 32-bit index,
972 indicating the maximum usable PCR index. However, TCG reserves register indices 230
973 and higher for later versions of the specification. A TPM implementation MUST NOT
974 provide registers with indices greater than or equal to 230. In this specification, the
975 following terminology is used (although this internal format is not mandated).
- 976 9. The PSS MUST define at least define one measurement that the RTM MUST make and
977 the PCR where the measurement is stored.
- 978 10. A TCG measurement agent MAY discard a duplicate event instead of incorporating it in a
979 PCR, provided that:
- 980 11. A relevant TCG platform specification explicitly permits duplicates of this type of event to
981 be discarded
- 982 12. The PCR already incorporates at least one event of this type
- 983 13. An event of this type previously incorporated into the PCR included a statement that
984 duplicate such events may be discarded. This option could be used where frequent
985 recording of sleep states will adversely affect the lifetime of a TPM, for example.
- 986 14. PCRs and the protected capabilities that operate upon them MAY NOT be used until
987 power-on self-test (TPM POST) has completed. If TPM POST fails, the TPM_Extend
988 operation will fail; and, of greater importance, the TPM_Quote operation and TPM_Seal

989 operations that respectively report and examine the PCR contents MUST fail. At the
990 successful completion of TPM POST, all PCRs MUST be set to their default value (either
991 0x00...00 or 0xFF...FF). Additionally, the UINT32 flags MUST be set to zero.

992 5. Endorsement Key Creation

993 **Start of informative comment**

994 The TPM contains a 2048-bit RSA key pair called the endorsement key (EK). The public
995 portion of the key is the PUBEK and the private portion the PRIVEK. Due to the nature of
996 this key pair, both the PUBEK and the PRIVEK have privacy and security concerns.

997 The TPM has the EK generated before the end customer receives the platform. The entity
998 that causes EK generation is also the entity that will create a credential attesting to the
999 validity of the TPM and the EK.

1000 The TPM can generate the EK internally using the TPM_CreateEndorsementKey or by using
1001 an outside key generator. The EK needs to indicate the genealogy of the EK generation.

1002 Subsequent attempts to either generate an EK or insert an EK must fail.

1003 If the data structure TPM_ENDORSEMENT_CREDENTIAL is stored on a platform after an
1004 Owner has taken ownership of that platform, it SHALL exist only in storage to which access
1005 is controlled and is available to authorized entities.

1006 **End of informative comment**

- 1007 1. The EK MUST be a 2048-bit RSA key
 - 1008 a. The public portion of the key is the PUBEK
 - 1009 b. The private portion of the key is the PRIVEK
 - 1010 c. The PRIVEK SHALL exist only in a TPM-shielded location.
- 1011 2. Access to the PRIVEK and PUBEK MUST only be via TPM protected capabilities
 - 1012 a. The protected capabilities MUST require TPM Owner authentication or operator
1013 physical presence
- 1014 3. The generation of the EK may use a process external to the TPM and
1015 TPM_CreateEndorsementKey
 - 1016 a. The external generation MUST result in an EK that has the same properties as an
1017 internally generated EK
 - 1018 b. The external generation process MUST protect the EK from exposure during the
1019 generation and insertion of the EK
 - 1020 c. After insertion of the EK the TPM state MUST be the same as the result of the
1021 TPM_CreateEndorsementKey execution
 - 1022 d. The process MUST guarantee correct generation, cryptographic strength,
1023 uniqueness, privacy, and installation into a genuine TPM, of the EK
 - 1024 e. The entity that signs the EK credential MUST be satisfied that the generation process
1025 properly generated the EK and inserted it into the TPM
 - 1026 f. The process MUST be defined in the target of evaluation (TOE) of the security target
1027 in use to evaluate the TPM

1028 5.1 Controlling Access to PRIVEK

1029 **Start of informative comment**

1030 Exposure of the PRIVEK is a security concern.

1031 The TPM must ensure that the PRIVEK is not exposed outside of the TPM

1032 **End of informative comment**

1033 1. The PRIVEK MUST never be out of the control of a TPM shielded location

1034 **5.2 Controlling Access to PUBEK**

1035 **Start of informative comment**

1036 There are no security concerns with exposure or use of the PUBEK.

1037 Privacy guidelines suggest that PUBEK could be considered personally identifiable
1038 information (PII) if it were associated in some way with personal information (PI) or
1039 associated with other PII, but PUBEK alone cannot be considered PII. Arbitrary random
1040 numbers do not represent a threat to privacy unless further associated with PI or PII. The
1041 PUBEK is an arbitrary random number that may be associated with aggregate platform
1042 information, but not personally identifiable information.

1043 An EK may become associated with personally identifiable information when an alias
1044 platform identifier (AIK) is also associated with PI. The attestation service could include
1045 personal information in the AIK credential, thereby making the AIK-PUBEK association PII –
1046 but not before.

1047 The association of PUBEK with AIK therefore is important to protect via privacy guidelines.
1048 The owner/user of the TPM should be able to control whether PUBEK is disclosed along
1049 with AIK. The owner/user should be notified of personal information that might be added to
1050 an AIK credential, which could result in AIK being considered PII. The owner/user should
1051 be able to evaluate the mechanisms used by an attestation entity to protect PUBEK-AIK
1052 associations before disclosure occurs. No other entity should be privy to owner/user
1053 authorized disclosure besides the intended attestation entity.

1054 Several commands may be used to negotiate the conditions of PUBEK-AIK disclosure.
1055 TPM_MakeIdentity discloses PUBEK-AIK in the context of requesting an AIK credential.
1056 TPM_ActivateIdentity ensures the owner/user has not been spoofed by an interloper. These
1057 interfaces allow the owner/user to choose whether disclosure is acceptable and control the
1058 circumstances under which disclosure takes place. They do not allow the owner/user the
1059 ability to retain control of PUBEK-AIK subsequent to disclosure except by traditional means
1060 of trusting the attestation entity to abide by an acceptable privacy policy. The owner/user is
1061 able to associate the accepted privacy policy with the disclosure operation (e.g.
1062 TPM_MakeIdentity).

1063 A persistent flag called readPubek can be set to TRUE to permit reading of PUBEK via
1064 TPM_ReadPubek. Reporting the PUBEK value is not considered privacy sensitive because it
1065 cannot be associated with any of the AIK keys managed by the TPM without using TPM
1066 protected-capabilities.. Keys are encrypted with a nonce when flushed from TPM shielded-
1067 locations, Cryptanalysis of flushed keys will not reveal an association of EK to any AIK...

1068 The command that manipulates the readPubek flag is TPM_disablePubekRead.

1069 **End of informative comment**

1070 6. Attestation Identity Keys

1071 **Start of informative comment**

1072 The Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is an alias to the Endorsement Key (EK). The AIK is a
1073 2048-bit RSA key. Generation of an AIK can occur anytime after establishment of the TPM
1074 Owner. The TPM can generate a virtually unlimited number of AIK.

1075 The TPM Owner controls all aspects of the generation and activation of an AIK. The TPM
1076 Owner controls any data associated with the AIK. The AIK credential may contain
1077 application specific information.

1078 An AIK is a signature key and it signs information generated internally by the TPM. The
1079 data would include PCR, other keys and TPM status information. The AIK is a substitute for
1080 the EK, which cannot perform signatures for security reasons and cannot perform
1081 signatures due to privacy concerns.

1082 AIK creation involves three TPM commands.

1083 The TPM_MakeIdentity command causes the TPM to generate the AIK key pair. The
1084 command also discloses the EK-AIK binding to the service that will issue the AIK credential.

1085 The TPM_ActivateIdentity command unwraps a session key that allows for the decryption of
1086 the AIK credential. The session key was encrypted using the PUBEK and requires the
1087 PRIVEK to perform the decryption.

1088 The TPM_RecoverIdentity allows for a subsequent recovery of the session key by again
1089 performing the decryption using the PRIVEK.

1090 Use of the AIK credential is outside of the control of the TPM.

1091 The user of an AIK must prove knowledge of the 160-bit AIK authentication value to use the
1092 AIK.

1093 **End of informative comment**

1094 7. TPM Ownership

1095 **Start of informative comment**

1096 Taking ownership of a TPM is the process of inserting a shared secret into a TPM shielded-
1097 location. Any entity that knows the shared secret is a TPM Owner. Proof of ownership
1098 occurs when an entity, in response to a challenge, proves knowledge of the shared secret.
1099 Certain operations in the TPM require authentication from a TPM Owner.

1100 Certain operations also allow the human, with physical possession of the platform, to assert
1101 TPM Ownership rights. When asserting TPM Ownership, using physical presence, the
1102 operations must not expose any secrets protected by the TPM.

1103 The platform owner controls insertion of the shared secret into the TPM. The platform
1104 owner sets the NV persistent flag ownershipEnabled that allows the execution of the
1105 TPM_TakeOwnership command. The TPM_SetOwnerInstall, the command that controls the
1106 value ownershipEnabled, requires the assertion of physical presence.

1107 Attempting to execute TPM_TakeOwnership fails when a TPM already has an owner. To
1108 remove an owner when the current TPM Owner is unable to remove themselves, the human
1109 that is in possession of the platform asserts physical presence and executes
1110 TPM_ForceClear which removes the shared secret.

1111 The insertion protocol that supplies the shared secret has the following requirements:
1112 confidentiality, integrity, remoteness and verifiability.

1113 To provide confidentiality the proposed TPM Owner encrypts the shared secret using the
1114 PUBEK. This requires the PRIVEK to decrypt the value. As the PRIVEK is only available in
1115 the TPM the encrypted shared secret is only available to the intended TPM.

1116 The integrity of the process occurs by the TPM providing proof of the value of the shared
1117 secret inserted into the TPM.

1118 By using the confidentiality and integrity, the protocol is useable by TPM Owners that are
1119 remote to the platform.

1120 The new TPM Owner validates the insertion of the shared secret by using integrity response.

1121 **End of informative comment**

1122 The TPM MUST ship with no Owner installed. The TPM MUST use the ownership-control
1123 protocol (OIAP or OSAP)

1124 7.1 Platform Ownership and Root of Trust for Storage

1125 **Start of informative comment**

1126 The semantics of platform ownership are tied to the Root-of-trust-for-storage (RTS). The
1127 TPM_TakeOwnership command creates a new Storage Root Key (SRK) and new TPMProof
1128 value whenever a new owner is established. It follows that objects owned by a previous
1129 owner will not be inherited by the new owner. Objects that should be inherited must be
1130 transferred by deliberate data migration actions.

1131 **End of informative comment**

8. Authentication and Authorization Data

Start of informative comment

Using security vernacular the terms below apply to the TPM for this discussion:

Authentication: The process of providing proof of claimed ownership of an object or a subject's claimed identity.

Authorization: Granting a subject appropriate access to an object.

Each TPM object that does not allow "public" access contains a 160-bit shared secret. This shared secret is enveloped within the object itself. The TPM grants use of TPM objects based on the presentation of the matching 160-bits using protocols designed to provide protection of the shared secret. This shared secret is called the AuthData.

Neither the TPM, nor its objects (such as keys), contain access controls for its objects (the exception to this is what is provided by the delegation mechanism). If a subject presents the AuthData, that subject is granted full use of the object based on the object's capabilities, not a set of rights or permissions of the subject. This apparent overloading of the concepts of authentication and authorization has caused some confusion. This is caused by having two similarly rooted but distinct perspectives.

From the perspective of the TPM looking out, this AuthData is its sole mechanism for authenticating the owner of its objects, thus from its perspective it is authentication data. However, from the application's perspective this data is typically the result of other functions that might perform authentications or authorizations of subjects using higher level mechanisms such as OS login, file system access, etc. Here, AuthData is a result of these functions so in this usage, it authorizes access to the TPM's objects. From this perspective, i.e., the application looking in on the TPM and its objects, the AuthData is authorization data. For this reason, and thanks to a common root within the English language, the term for this data is chosen to be AuthData and is to be interpreted or expanded as either authentication data or authorization data depending on context and perspective.

The term AuthData refers to the 160-bit value used to either prove ownership of, or authorization to use, an object. This is also called the object's shared secret. The term authorization will be used when referring the combined action of verifying the AuthData and allowing access to the object or function. The term authorization session applies to a state where the AuthData has been authentication and a session handle established that is associated with that authentication.

A wide-range of objects use AuthData. It is used to establish platform ownership, key use restrictions, object migration and to apply access control to opaque objects protected by the TPM.

AuthData is a 160-bit shared-secret plus high-entropy random number. The assumption is the shared-secret and random number are mixed using SHA-1 digesting, but no specific function for generating AuthData is specified by TCG.

TCG command processing sessions (e.g. OSAP, ADIP) may use AuthData as an initialization vector when creating a one-time pad. Session encryption is used to encrypt portions of command messages exchanged between TPM and a caller.

1174 The TPM stores AuthData with TPM controlled-objects and in shielded-locations. AuthData
1175 is never in the clear, when managed by the TPM except in shielded-locations. Only TPM
1176 protected-capabilities may access AuthData (contained in the TPM). AuthData objects may
1177 not be used for any other purpose besides authentication and authorization of TPM
1178 operations on controlled-objects.

1179 Outside the TPM, a reference monitor of some kind is responsible for protecting AuthData.
1180 AuthData should be regarded as a controlled data item (CDI) in the context of the security
1181 model governing the reference monitor. TCG expects this entity to preserve the interests of
1182 the platform Owner.

1183 There is no requirement that instances of AuthData be unique.

1184 **End of informative comment**

1185 The TPM MUST reserve 160 bits for the AuthData. The TPM treats the AuthData as a blob.
1186 The TPM MUST keep AuthData in a shielded-location.

1187 The TPM MUST enforce that the only usage in the TPM of the AuthData is to perform
1188 authorizations.

1189 **8.1 Dictionary Attack Considerations**

1190 **Start of informative comment**

1191 The decision to provide protections against dictionary attacks is due to the inability of the
1192 TPM to guarantee that an authorization value has high entropy. While the creation and
1193 authorization protocols could change to support the assurance of high entropy values, the
1194 changes would be drastic and would totally invalidate any 1.x TPM version.

1195 Version 1.1 explicitly avoided any requirements for dictionary attack mitigation.

1196 Version 1.2 adds the requirement that the TPM vendor provide some assistance against
1197 dictionary attacks. The internal mechanism is vendor specific. The TPM designer should
1198 review the requirements for dictionary attack mitigation in the Common Criteria.

1199 The 1.2 specification does not provide any functions to turn on the dictionary attack
1200 prevention. The specification does provide a way to reset from the TPM response to an
1201 attack.

1202 By way of example, the following is a way to implement the dictionary attack mitigation.

1203 The TPM keeps a count of failed authorization attempts. The vendor allows the TPM Owner
1204 to set a threshold of failed authorizations. When the count exceeds the threshold, the TPM
1205 locks up and does not respond to any requests for a time out period. The time out period
1206 doubles each time the count exceeds the threshold. If the TPM resets during a time out
1207 period, the time out period starts over after TPM_Init, or TPM_Startup. To reset the count
1208 and the time out period the TPM Owner executes TPM_ResetLockValues. If the
1209 authorization for TPM_ResetLockValues fails, the TPM must lock up for the entire time out
1210 period and no additional attempts at unlocking will be successful. Executing
1211 TPM_ResetLockValues when outside of a time out period still results in the resetting of the
1212 count and time out period.

1213 **End of informative comment**

1214 The TPM SHALL incorporate mechanism(s) that will provide some protection against
1215 exhaustive or dictionary attacks on the authorization values stored within the TPM.

1216 This version of the TPM specification does NOT specify the particular strategy to be used.
1217 Some examples might include locking out the TPM after a certain number of failures,
1218 forcing a reboot under some combination of failures, or requiring specific actions on the
1219 part of some actors after an attack has been detected. The mechanisms to manage these
1220 strategies are vendor specific at this time.

1221 If the TPM in response to the attacks locks up for some time period or requires a special
1222 operation to restart, the TPM MUST prevent any other TPM command from executing until
1223 the mitigation mechanism completes. The TPM Owner can reset the mechanism using the
1224 TPM_ResetLockValue command.

1225 9. TPM Operation

1226 Start of informative comment

1227 Through the course of TPM operation, it may enter several operational modes that include
1228 power-up, self-test, administrative modes and full operation. This section describes TPM
1229 operational states and state transition criteria. Where applicable, the TPM commands used
1230 to facilitate state transition or function are included in diagrams and descriptions.

1231 The TPM keeps the information relative to the TPM operational state in a combination of
1232 persistent and volatile flags. For ease of reading the persistent flags are prefixed by pFlags
1233 and the volatile flags prefixed by vFlags.

1234 The following state diagram describes TPM operational states at a high level. Subsequent
1235 state diagrams drill-down to finer detail that describes fundamental operations, protections
1236 on operations and the transitions between them.

1237 The state diagrams use the following notation:



1238 - Signifies a state.



1239 - Transitions between states are represented as a single headed arrows.



1240 - Circular transitions indicate operations that don't result in a transition to another
1241 state.



1242 - Decision boxes split state flow based on a logical test. Decision conditions are called
1243 Guards and are identified by bracketed text..

1244 < [text] > Bracketed text indicates transitions that are gated. Text within the brackets
1245 describes the pre-condition that must be met before state transition may occur.

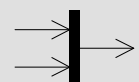
1246 < /name > Transitions may list the events that trigger state transition. The forward slash
1247 demarcates event names.



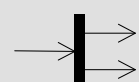
1248 - The starting point for reading state diagrams.



1249 - The ending point for state diagrams. Perpetual state systems may not have an ending
1250 indicator.



1251 - The collection bar consolidates multiple identical transition events into a single
1252 transition arrow.



1253 - The distribution bar splits transitions to flow into multiple states.

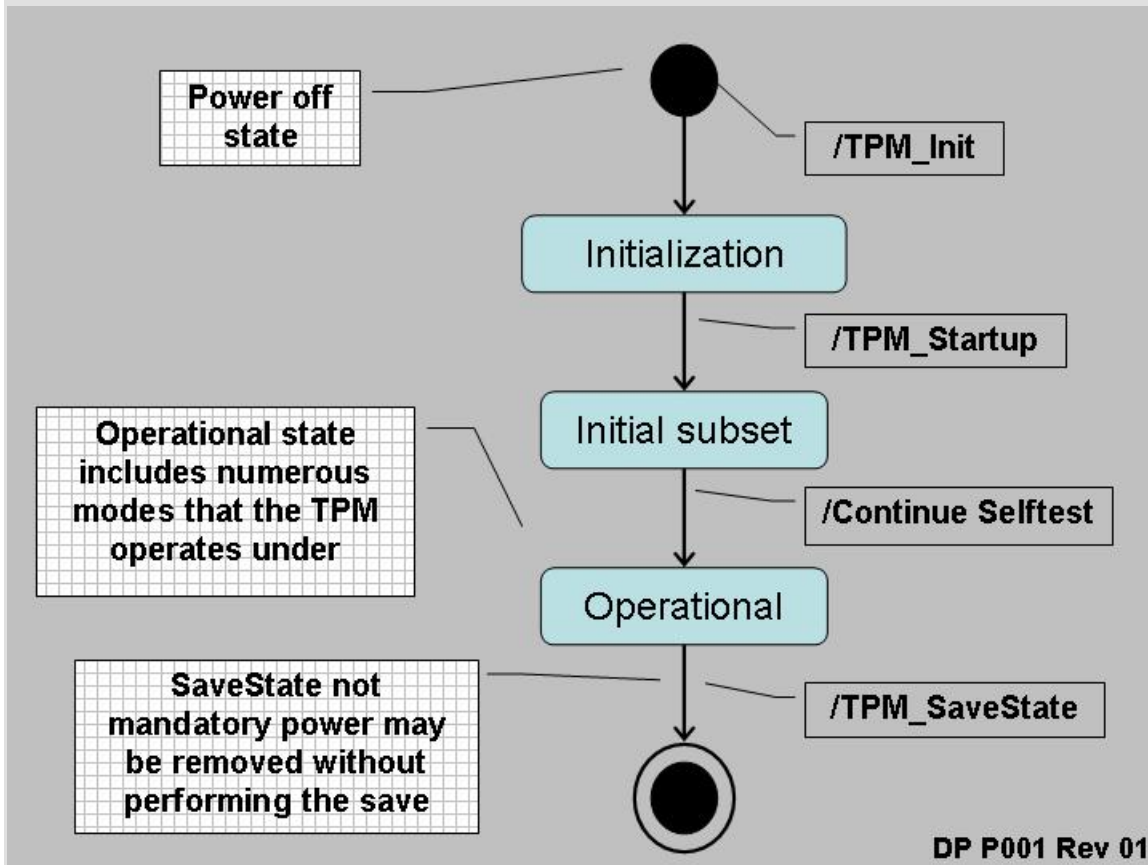
1254 **H** - The history indicator means state values are remembered across context switches or
1255 power-cycles.

1256 **End of informative comment**

9.1 TPM Initialization & Operation State Flow

1257

1258 **Start of informative comment**



1259

1260 **Figure 9:a - TPM Operational States**

1261 **End of informative comment**

9.1.1 Initialization

1262

1263 **Start of informative comment**

1264 TPM_Init transitions the TPM from a power-off state to one where the TPM begins an
1265 initialization process. TPM_Init could be the result of power being applied to the platform or
1266 a hard reset.

1267 TPM_Init sets an internal flag to indicate that the TPM is undergoing initialization. The TPM
1268 must complete initialization before it is operational. The completion of initialization requires
1269 the receipt of the TPM_Startup command.

1270 The TPM is not fully operational until all of the self-tests are complete. Successful
1271 completion of the self-tests allows the TPM to enter fully operational mode.

1272 Fully operational does not imply that all functions of the TPM are available. The TPM needs
1273 to have a TPM Owner and be enabled for all functions to be available.

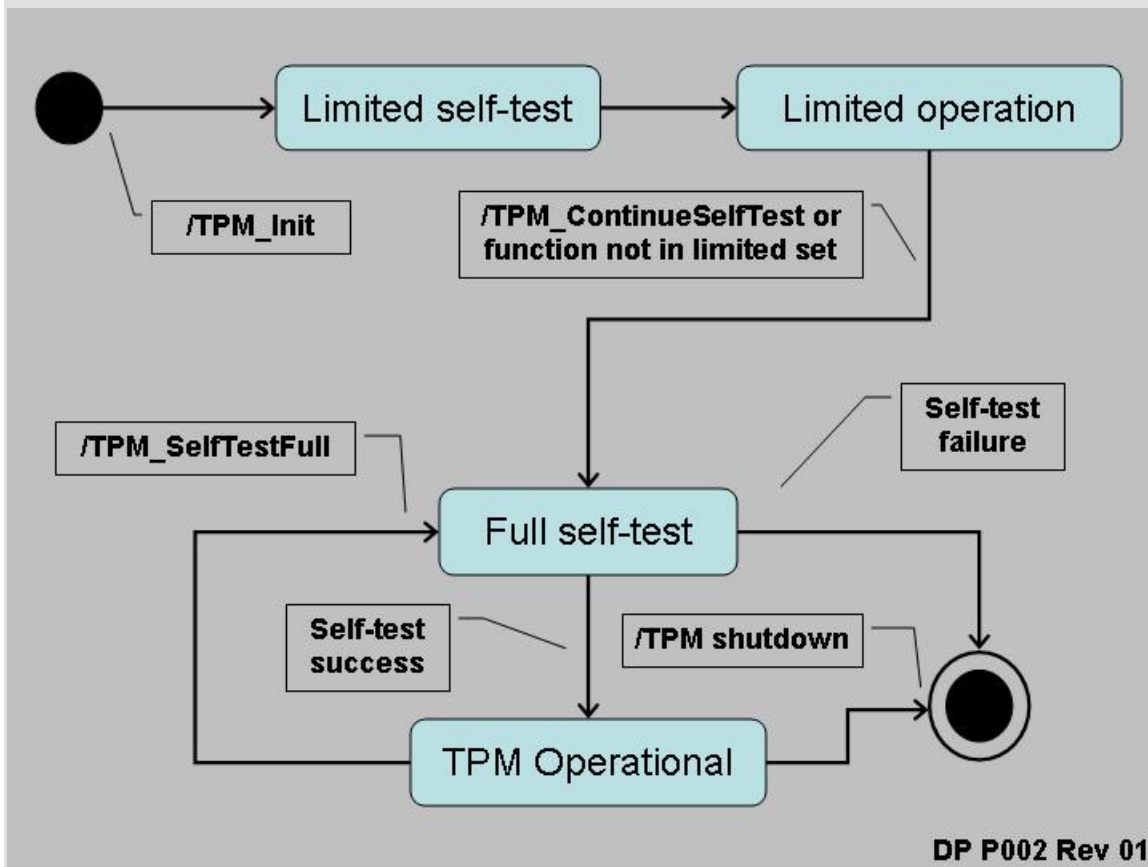
1274 The TPM transitions out of the operational mode by having power removed from the system.
1275 Prior to the exiting operational mode the TPM prepares for the transition by executing the
1276 TPM_SaveState command. There is no requirement that SaveState execute before the
1277 transition to power-off mode occurs.

1278 **End of informative comment**

1279 1. After TPM_Init and until receipt of TPM_Startup the TPM MUST return
1280 TPM_INVALID_POSTINIT for all commands. Prior to receipt of TPM_Startup the TPM
1281 MAY enter shutdown or failure mode.

1282 **9.2 Self-Test Modes**

1283 **Start of informative comment**



1284

1285 Figure 9:b - Self-Test States

1286 After initialization the TPM performs a limited self-test. This tests provides the assurance
1287 that a selected subset of TPM commands will perform properly. The limited nature of the
1288 self-test allows the TPM to be functional in as short of time as possible. The commands
1289 enabled by this self-test are:

1290 TPM_SHA1xxx – Enabling the SHA-1 commands allows the TPM to assist the platform
1291 startup code. The startup code may execute in a extremely constrained memory

1292 environment and having the TPM resources available to perform hash functions can allow
1293 the measurement of code at an early time. While the hash is available there is no speed
1294 requirements on the I/O bus to the TPM or on the TPM itself so use of this functionality
1295 may not meet platform startup requirements.

1296 TPM_Extend – Enabling the extend, and by reference the PCR, allows the startup code to
1297 perform measurements. Extending could use the SHA-1 TPM commands or perform the
1298 hash using the main processor.

1299 TPM_Startup – This command must be available as it is the transition command from the
1300 initial environment to the fully operational state.

1301 TPM_ContinueSelfTest – This command causes the TPM to complete the self-tests on all
1302 other TPM functions. If TPM receives a command, and the self-test for that command has
1303 not been completed, the TPM will automatically issue the TPM_ContinueSelfTest command.

1304 The complete self-test ensures that all TPM functionality is available and functioning
1305 properly.

1306 **End of informative comment**

1307 1. At startup, a TPM MUST self-test all internal functions that are necessary to do
1308 TPM_SHA1Start, TPM_SHA1Update, TPM_SHA1Complete, TPM_SHA1CompleteExtend,
1309 TPM_Extend, TPM_Startup, TPM_ContinueSelfTest

1310 2. The platform specific specification MUST define the maximum startup self-test time

1311 9.2.1 Operational Self-Test

1312 **Start of informative comment**

1313 The complete self-test is initiated by one of two events, TPM_ContinueSelfTest or
1314 TPM_SelfTestFull.

1315 TPM_ContinueSelfTest is the command issued during platform initialization after the
1316 platform has made use of the early command (perhaps for an early measurement) and the
1317 platform is now performing other initializations and the TPM can be left alone to complete
1318 the self-tests. Before any command other than the limited subset is executed the all self-
1319 tests must be complete.

1320 TPM_SelfTestFull is a request to have the TPM perform another complete self-test. This test
1321 will take some time but provides an accurate assessment of the TPM's ability to perform all
1322 operations.

1323 The original design of TPM_ContinueSelfTest was for the TPM to test those functions that
1324 the original startup did not test. The FIPS-140 evaluation of the specification requested a
1325 change such that TPM_ContinueSelfTest would perform a complete self-test. The rationale
1326 is that the original tests are only part of the initialization of the TPM; if they fail, the TPM
1327 does not complete initialization. Performing a complete test after initialization meets the
1328 FIPS-140 requirements. The TPM may work differently in FIPS mode or the TPM may simply
1329 write the TPM_ContinueSelfTest command such that it always performs the complete check.

1330 TPM_ContinueSelfTest causes a test of the TPM internal functions and the command is
1331 asynchronous. The TPM immediately returns a successful result code, before starting the
1332 tests. When testing is complete, the TPM does not return any result. TPM_ContinueSelfTest
1333 may start automatically if the TPM receives a command and there has been no testing of the

1334 underlying functionality. Programmers of TPM drivers should take into account the time
1335 estimates for self-test and minimize the polling for self-test completion. Calls to the TPM,
1336 while self-test is executing, will return a “busy” signal.

1337 Upon the completion of the self-tests the result of the self-tests are held in the TPM such
1338 that a subsequent call to TPM_GetTestResults returns the self-test result.

1339 In version 1.1, there was a separate command to create a signed self-test,
1340 TPM_CertifySelfTest. Version 1.2 deprecates the command. The new use model is to perform
1341 TPM_GetTestResults inside of a transport session and then use
1342 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned to obtain the signature.

1343 If self-tests fail, the TPM goes into failure state and does not allow most other operations to
1344 continue. The TPM_GetTestResult will operate in failure mode so an outside observer can
1345 obtain information as to the reason for the self-test failure.

1346 A TPM may take two courses of action when presented with a command that requires an
1347 untested resource. Either the TPM may delay the execution of the command until the self-
1348 test has completed, or the TPM may implicitly execute the self-test and return a
1349 TPM_RETRY return code causing the external software to retry the command. The following
1350 example shows how software can detect either mechanism with a single piece of code

- 1351 1. SW sends TPM_xxx command
- 1352 2. SW checks return code from TPM
- 1353 3. IF return code is TPM_RETRY, SW attempts to resend
 - 1354 a. If the TIS times out waiting for TPM ready, pause for self-test time then resend
 - 1355 b. if TIS timeout, then error
- 1356 4. else if any other return code continue

1357 **End of informative comment**

- 1358 1. The TPM MUST provide startup self-tests. The TPM MUST provide mechanisms to allow
1359 the self-tests to be run on demand. The response from the self-tests is pass or fail.
- 1360 2. The TPM MUST complete the startup self-tests in a manner and timeliness that allows
1361 the TPM to be of use to the BIOS during the collection of integrity metrics.
- 1362 3. The TPM MUST complete the required checks before a given feature is in use. If a
1363 function self-test is not complete the TPM MUST return TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST
- 1364 4. There are two sections of startup self-tests: required and recommended. The
1365 recommended tests are not a requirement due to timing constraints. The TPM
1366 manufacturer should perform as many tests as possible in the time constraints.
- 1367 5. The TPM MUST report the tests that it performs.
- 1368 6. The TPM MUST provide a mechanism to allow self-test to execute on request by any
1369 challenger.
- 1370 7. The TPM MUST provide for testing of some operations during each execution of the
1371 operation.
- 1372 8. The TPM MUST check the following:
 - 1373 a. RNG functionality

- 1374 b. Reading and extending the integrity registers. The self-test for the integrity registers
1375 will leave the integrity registers in a known state.
- 1376 c. Testing the EK integrity, if it exists
- 1377 i. This requirement specifies that the TPM will verify that the endorsement key pair
1378 can sign and verify a known value. This test also tests the RSA sign and verify
1379 engine. If the EK has not yet been generated the TPM action is manufacturer
1380 specific.
- 1381 d. The integrity of the protected capabilities of the TPM
- 1382 i. This means that the TPM must ensure that its “microcode” has not changed, and
1383 not that a test must be run on each function.
- 1384 e. Any tamper-resistance markers
- 1385 i. The tests on the tamper-resistance or tamper-evident markers are under
1386 programmable control. There is no requirement to check tamper-evident tape or
1387 the status of epoxy surrounding the case.
- 1388 9. The TPM SHOULD check the following:
- 1389 a. The hash functionality
- 1390 i. This check will hash a known value and compare it to an expected result. There is
1391 no requirement to accept external data to perform the check.
- 1392 ii. The TPM MAY support a test using external data.
- 1393 b. Any symmetric algorithms
- 1394 i. This check will use known data with a random key to encrypt and decrypt the
1395 data
- 1396 c. Any additional asymmetric algorithms
- 1397 i. This check will use known data to encrypt and decrypt.
- 1398 d. The key-wrapping mechanism
- 1399 i. The TPM should wrap and unwrap a key. The TPM MUST NOT use the
1400 endorsement key pair for this test.
- 1401 e. Any other internal mechanisms
- 1402 10. Self-Test Failure
- 1403 a. When the TPM detects a failure during any self-test, the part experiencing the failure
1404 MUST enter a shutdown mode. This shutdown mode will allow only the following
1405 operations to occur:
- 1406 i. Update. The update function MAY replace invalid microcode, providing that the
1407 parts of the TPM that provide update functionality have passed self-test.
- 1408 ii. TPM_GetTestResult. This command can assist the TPM manufacturer in
1409 determining the cause of the self-test failure.
- 1410 iii. All other operations will return the error code TPM_FAILEDSELFTTEST.
- 1411 b. Upon entering failure mode, the TPM clears all information except those items
1412 specified in TPMOwnerClear.

- 1413 c. If the TPM detects an attack, by whatever mechanism the TPM uses, the TPM MUST
1414 invalidate all session keys and any internal keys, like AES, in use to store off-chip
1415 blobs.
- 1416 11. TSC commands do not operate on shielded-locations and have no requirement to be self-
1417 tested before any use. TPM's SHOULD test these functions before operation.
- 1418 12. Prior to the completion of TPM_ContinueSelfTest the TPM MAY respond in two ways
- 1419 a. The TPM MAY automatically invoke TPM_ContinueSelfTest
- 1420 b. The TPM MAY return the error code TPM_NEEDS_SELFTEST

1421 9.3 Startup

1422 **Start of informative comment**

1423 Startup transitions the TPM from the initialization state to an operational state. The
1424 transition includes information from the platform to inform the TPM of the platform
1425 operating state. TPM_Startup has three options: Clear, State and Deactivated.

1426 The Clear option informs the TPM that the platform is starting in a “cleared” state or most
1427 likely a complete reboot. The TPM is to set itself to the default values and operational state
1428 specified by the TPM Owner.

1429 The State option informs the TPM that the platform is requesting the TPM to recover a saved
1430 state and continue operation from the saved state. The platform previously made the
1431 TPM_SaveState request to the TPM such that the TPM prepares values to be recovered later.

1432 The Deactivated state informs the TPM that it should not allow further operations and
1433 should fail all subsequent command requests. The Deactivated state can only be reset by
1434 performing another TPM_Init.

1435 **End of informative comment**

1436 9.4 Operational Mode

1437 **Start of informative comment**

1438 After the TPM completes both TPM_Startup and self-tests, the TPM is ready for operation.

1439 There are three discrete states, enabled or disabled, active or inactive and owned or
1440 unowned. These three states when combined form eight operational modes.



1441

1442 Figure 9:c - Eight Modes of Operation

1443 S1 is the fully operational state where all TPM functions are available. S8 represents a mode
1444 where all TPM features (except those to change the state) are off.

1445 Given the eight modes of operation, the TPM can be flexible in accommodating a wide range
1446 of usage scenarios. The default delivery state for a TPM should be S8 (disabled, inactive and
1447 unowned). In S8, the only mechanism available to move the TPM to S1 is having physical
1448 access to the platform.

1449 Two examples illustrate the possibilities of shipping combinations.

1450 Example 1

1451 The customer does not want the TPM to attest to any information relative to the platform.
1452 The customer does not want any remote entity to attempt to change the control options that
1453 the platform owner is setting. For this customer the platform manufacturer sets the TPM in
1454 S8 (disabled, deactivated and unowned).

1455 To change the state of the platform the platform owner would assert physical presence and
1456 enable, activate and insert the TPM Owner shared secret. The details of how to change the
1457 various modes is in subsequent sections.

1458 This particular sequence gives maximum control to the customer.

1459 Example 2

1460 A corporate customer wishes to have platforms shipped to their employees and the IT
1461 department wishes to take control of the TPM remotely. To satisfy these needs the TPM
1462 should be in S5 (enabled, active and unowned). When the platform connects to the
1463 corporate LAN the IT department would execute the TPM_TakeOwnership command
1464 remotely.

1465 This sequence allows the IT department to accept platforms into their network without
1466 having to have physical access to each new machine.

1467 **End of informative comment**

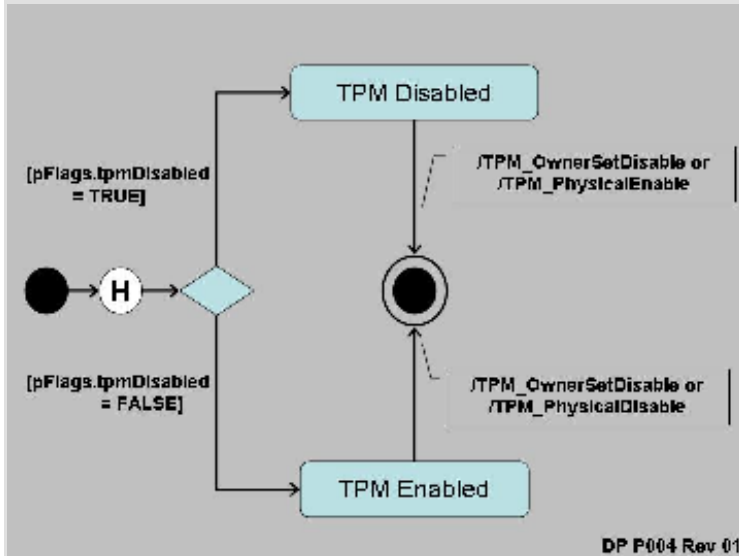
1468 The TPM MUST have commands to perform the following:

- 1469 1. Enable and disable the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner authorized or
- 1470 with the assertion of physical presence
- 1471 2. Activate and deactivate the TPM. These commands MUST work as TPM Owner
- 1472 authorized or with the assertion of physical presence
- 1473 3. Activate and deactivate the ability to take ownership of the TPM
- 1474 4. Assert ownership of the TPM.

1475 9.4.1 Enabling a TPM

1476 Informative comment

1477 A disabled TPM is not able to execute commands that use the resources of a TPM. While
1478 some commands are available (SHA-1 for example) the TPM is not able to load keys and
1479 perform TPM_Seal and other such operations. These restrictions are the same as for an
1480 inactive TPM. The difference between inactive and disabled is that a disabled TPM is unable
1481 to execute the TPM_TakeOwnership command. A disabled TPM that has a TPM Owner is not
1482 able to execute normal TPM commands.



- 1483
- 1484 pFlags.tpmDisabled contains the current enablement status. When set to TRUE the TPM is
- 1485 disabled, when FALSE the TPM is enabled.
- 1486 Changing the setting pFlags.tpmDisabled has no effect on any secrets or other values held
- 1487 by the TPM. No keys, monotonic counters or other resources are invalidated by changing
- 1488 TPM enablement. There is no guarantee that session resources (like transport sessions)
- 1489 survive the change in enablement, but there is no loss of secrets.
- 1490 The TPM_OwnerSetDisable command can be used to transition in either Enabled or
- 1491 Disabled states. The desired state is a parameter to TPM_OwnerSetDisable. This command
- 1492 requires TPM Owner authentication to operate. It is suitable for post-boot and remote
- 1493 invocation.
- 1494 An unowned TPM requires the execution of TPM_PhysicalEnable to enable the TPM and
- 1495 TPM_PhysicalDisable to disable the TPM. Operators of an owned TPM can also execute

1496 these two commands. The use of the physical commands allows a platform operator to
1497 disable the TPM without TPM Owner authorization.

1498 TPM_PhysicalEnable transitions the TPM from Disabled to Enabled state. This command is
1499 guarded by a requirement of operator physical presence. Additionally, this command can be
1500 invoked by a physical event at the platform, whether or not the TPM has an Owner or there
1501 is a human physically present. This command is suitable for pre-boot invocation.

1502 TPM_PhysicalDisable transitions the TPM from Enabled to Disabled state. It has the same
1503 guard and invocation properties as TPM_PhysicalEnable.

1504 The subset of commands the TPM is able to execute is defined in the structures document
1505 in the persistent flag section.

1506 Misuse of the disabled state can result in denial-of-service. Proper management of Owner
1507 AuthData and physical access to the platform is a critical element in ensuring availability of
1508 the system.

1509 **End of informative comment**

1510 1. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command that is executed with TPM
1511 Owner authorization.

1512 2. The TPM MUST provide an enable and disable command this is executed locally using
1513 physical presence.

1514 9.4.2 Activating a TPM

1515 Informative comment

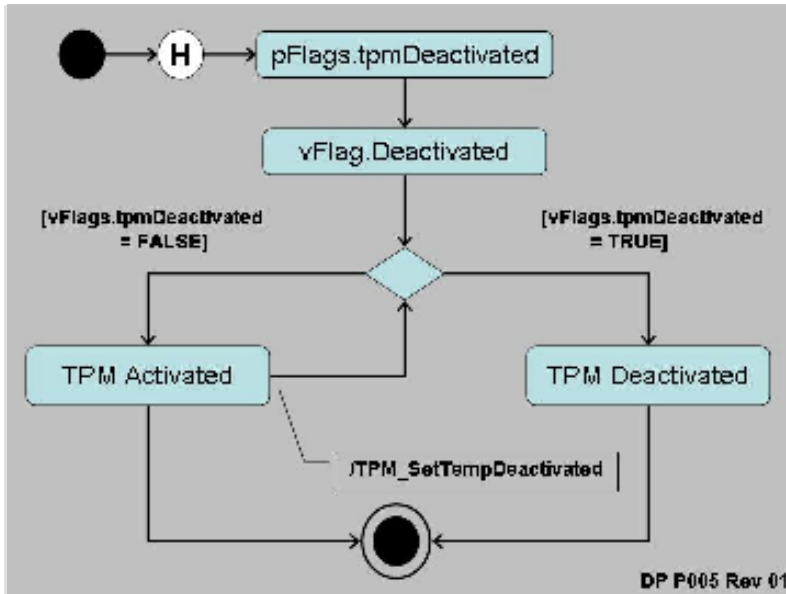
1516 A deactivated TPM is not able to execute commands that use TPM resources. A major
1517 difference between deactivated and disabled is that a deactivated TPM CAN execute the
1518 TPM_TakeOwnership command.

1519 Activation control is with both persistent and volatile flags. The persistent flag is never
1520 directly checked by the TPM, rather it is the source of the original setting for the volatile
1521 flag. During TPM initialization the value of pFlags.tpmDeactivated is copied to
1522 vFlags.tpmDeactivated. When the TPM execution engine checks for TPM activation, it only
1523 references vFlags.tpmDeactivated.

1524 Toggling the state of pFlags.tpmDeactivated uses TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated. This
1525 command requires physical presence. There is no associated TPM Owner authenticated
1526 command as the TPM Owner can always execute TPM_OwnerSetDisabled which results in
1527 the same TPM operations. The toggling of this flag does not affect the current operation of
1528 the TPM but requires a reboot of the platform such that the persistent flag is again copied
1529 to the volatile flag.

1530 The volatile flag, vFlags.tpmDeactivated, is set during initialization by the value of
1531 pFlags.tpmDeactivated. If vFlags.tpmDeactivated is TRUE the only way to reactivate the
1532 TPM is to reboot the platform and have pFlags reset the vFlags value.

1533 If vFlags is FALSE and the TPM running TPM_SetTempDeactivated will set
1534 vFlags.tpmDeactivated to TRUE and then require a reboot of the platform to reactivate the
1535 platform.



1536

1537 Figure 9:d - Activated and Deactivated States

1538 TPM activation is for Operator convenience. It allows the operator to deactivate the platform
 1539 during a user session when the operator does not want to disclose platform or attestation
 1540 identity.

1541 The subset of commands that are available when the TPM is deactivated is contained in the
 1542 structures document. The TPM_TakeOwnership command is available when deactivated.

1543 **End of informative comment**

- 1544 1. The TPM MUST maintain a non-volatile flag that indicates the activation state
- 1545 2. The TPM MUST provide for the setting of the non-volatile flag using a command that
 1546 requires physical presence
- 1547 3. The TPM MUST sets a volatile flag using the current setting of the non-volatile flag.
- 1548 4. The TPM MUST provide for a command that deactivates the TPM immediately
- 1549 5. The only mechanism to reactivate a TPM once deactivated is to power-cycle the system.

1550 **9.4.3 Taking TPM Ownership**

1551 **Start of informative comment**

1552 The owner of the TPM has ultimate control of the TPM. The owner of the TPM can enable or
 1553 disable the TPM, create AIK and set policies for the TPM. The process of taking ownership
 1554 must be a tightly controlled process with numerous checks and balances.

1555 The protections around the taking of ownership include the enablement status, specific
 1556 persistent flags and the assertion of physical presence.

1557 Control of the TPM revolves around knowledge of the TPM Owner authentication value.
 1558 Proving knowledge of authentication value proves the calling entity is the TPM Owner. It is
 1559 possible for more than one entity to know the TPM Owner authentication value.

1560 The TPM provides no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value.

1561 Recovery from a lost or forgotten TPM Owner authentication value involves removing the old
1562 value and installing a new one. The removal of the old value invalidates all information
1563 associated with the previous value. Insertion of a new value can occur after the removal of
1564 the old value.

1565 A disabled and inactive TPM that has no TPM Owner cannot install an owner.

1566 To invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value use either TPM_OwnerClear or
1567 TPM_ForceClear.

1568 **End of informative comment**

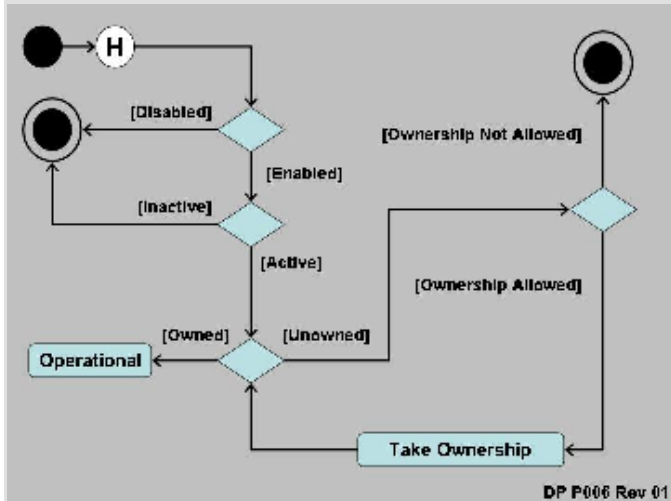
- 1569 1. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be a 160-bits
- 1570 2. The TPM Owner authentication value MUST be held in persistent storage
- 1571 3. The TPM MUST have no mechanisms to recover a lost TPM Owner authentication value

1572 **9.4.3.1 Enabling Ownership**

1573 **Informative comment**

1574 The state that a TPM must be in to allow for TPM_TakeOwnership to succeed is; enabled
1575 and fFlags.OwnershipEnabled TRUE.

1576 The following diagram shows the states and the operational checks the TPM makes before
1577 allowing the insertion of the TPM Ownership value.



1578

1579

1580 The TPM checks the disabled flag and then the inactive flag. If the flags indicate enabled
1581 then the TPM checks for the existence of a TPM Owner. If an Owner is not present the TPM
1582 then checks the OwnershipDisabled flag. If TRUE the TPM_TakeOwnership command will
1583 execute.

1584 While the TPM has no Owner but is enabled and active there is a limited subset of
1585 commands that will successfully execute.

1586 The TPM_SetOwnerInstall command toggles the state of the pFlags.OwnershipDisabled.
1587 TPM_SetOwnerInstall requires the assertion of physical presence to execute.

1588 **End of informative comment**

9.4.4 Transitioning Between Operational States

Start of informative comment

The following table is a recap of the commands necessary to transition a TPM from one state to another.

State	TPM Owner Auth	Physical Presence	Persistence
Disabled to Enabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalEnable	permanent
Enabled to Disabled	TPM_OwnerSetDisable	TPM_PhysicalDisable	permanent
Inactive to Active		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated	permanent
Active to Inactive		TPM_SetTempDeactivated	boot cycle

End of informative comment

9.5 Clearing the TPM

Start of informative comment

Clearing the TPM is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. It is possible the platform owner will change when in this state.

The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication or the assertion of physical presence.

The clear process performs the following tasks:

Invalidate the SRK. Once invalidated all information stored using the SRK is now unavailable. The invalidation does not change the blobs using the SRK rather there is no way to decrypt the blobs after invalidation of the SRK.

Invalidate tpmProof. tpmProof is a value that provides the uniqueness to values stored off of the TPM. By invalidating tpmProof all off TPM blobs will no longer load on the TPM.

Invalidate the TPM Owner authentication value. With the authentication value invalidated there are no TPM Owner authenticated commands that will execute.

Reset volatile and non-volatile data to manufacturer defaults.

The clear must not affect the EK.

Once cleared the TPM will return TPM_NOSRK to commands that require authentication.

The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation. The TPM must go through TPM_Init to properly set the PCR values.

Clear authentication comes from either the TPM owner or the assertion of physical presence. As the clear commands present a real opportunity for a denial of service attack there are mechanisms in place disabling the clear commands.

Disabling TPM_OwnerClear uses the TPM_DisableOwnerClear command. The state of ability to execute TPM_OwnerClear is then held as one of the non-volatile flags.

1619 Enablement of TPM_ForceClear is held in the volatile DisableForceClear flag.
1620 DisableForceClear is set to FALSE during TPM_Init. To disable the command software
1621 should issue the TPM_DisableForceClear command.

1622 During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue
1623 the TPM_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear operations if it has not
1624 been disabled by vFlags.DisabledForceClear being TRUE.

1625 The TPM can be configured to block all forms of clear operations. It is advisable to block
1626 clear operations to prevent an otherwise trivial denial-of-service attack. The assumption is
1627 the system startup code will issue the TPM_DisableForceClear on each power-cycle after it
1628 is determined the TPM_ForceClear command will not be necessary. The purpose of the
1629 TPM_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or
1630 forgotten the TPM Owner-authentication-data.

1631 The TPM_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the
1632 platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

1633 The commands to clear a TPM require either TPM Owner authentication, TPM_OwnerClear,
1634 or the assertion of physical presence, TPM_ForceClear.

1635 **End of informative comment**

- 1636 1. The TPM MUST support the clear operations.
- 1637 a. Clear operations MUST be authenticated by either the TPM Owner or physical
1638 presence
 - 1639 b. The TPM MUST support mechanisms to disable the clear operations
- 1640 2. The clear operation MUST perform at least the following actions
- 1641 a. SRK invalidation
 - 1642 b. tpmProof invalidation
 - 1643 c. TPM Owner authentication value invalidation
 - 1644 d. Resetting non-volatile values to defaults
 - 1645 e. Invalidation of volatile values
 - 1646 f. Invalidation of internal resources
- 1647 3. The clear operation must not affect the EK.

1648 **10. Physical Presence**

1649 **Start of informative comment**

1650 This specification describes commands that require physical presence at the platform before
1651 the command will operate. Physical presence implies direct interaction by a person – i.e.
1652 Operator with the platform / TPM.

1653 The type of controls that imply special privilege include:

- 1654 • Clearing an existing Owner from the TPM,
- 1655 • Temporarily deactivating a TPM,
- 1656 • Temporarily disabling a TPM.

1657 Physical presence implies a level of control and authorization to perform basic
1658 administrative tasks and to bootstrap management and access control mechanisms.

1659 Protection of low-level administrative interfaces can be provided by physical and electrical
1660 methods; or by software; or a combination of both. The guiding principle for designers is the
1661 protection mechanism should be difficult or impossible to spoof by rogue software.
1662 Designers should take advantage of restricted states inherent in platform operation. For
1663 example, in a PC, software executed during the power-on self-test (POST) cannot be
1664 disturbed without physical access to the platform. Alternatively, a hardware switch
1665 indicating physical presence is very difficult to circumvent by rogue software or remote
1666 attackers.

1667 TPM and platform manufacturers will determine the actual implementation approach. The
1668 strength of the protection mechanisms is determined by an evaluation of the platform.

1669 Physical presence indication is implemented as a flag in volatile memory known as the
1670 PhysicalPresenceV flag. When physical presence is established (TRUE) several TPM
1671 commands are able to function. They include:

- 1672 TPM_PhysicalEnable,
- 1673 TPM_PhysicalDisable,
- 1674 TPM_PhysicalSetDeactivated,
- 1675 TPM_ForceClear,
- 1676 TPM_SetOwnerInstall,

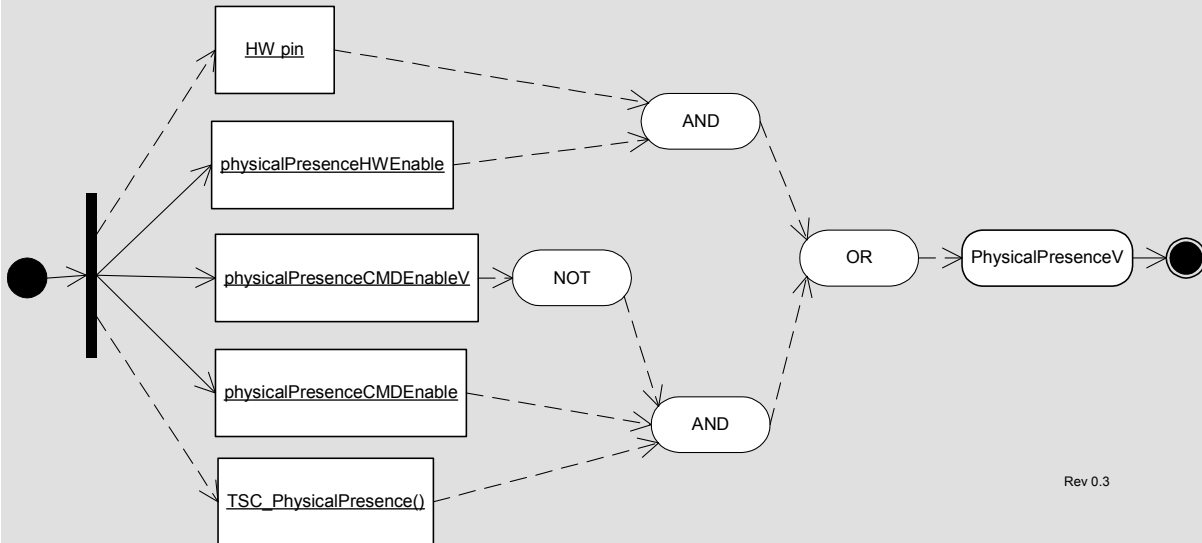
1677 In order to execute these commands, the TPM must obtain unambiguous assurance that
1678 the operation is authorized by physical-presence at the platform. The command processor
1679 in the I/O component checks the physicalPresenceV flag before continuing processing of
1680 TPM command blocks. The volatile physicalPresenceV flag is set only while the Operator is
1681 indeed physically present.

1682 TPM designers should take precautions to ensure testing of the physicalPresenceV flag
1683 value is not mask-able. For example, a special bus cycle could be used or a dedicated line
1684 implemented.

1685 There is an exception to physical presence semantics that allows a remote entity the ability
1686 to assert physical presence when that entity is not physically present. The
1687 TSC_PhysicalPresence command is used to change polarity of the physicalPresenceV flag.

1688 Its use is heavily guarded. See sections describing the TPM Opt-In component; and Volatile
1689 and Non-volatile memory components.

1690 The following diagram illustrates the flow of logic controlling updates to the
1691 physicalPresenceV flag:



Rev 0.3

1692

1693 Figure 10:a - Physical Presence Control Logic

1694 This diagram shows that the vFlags.physicalPresenceV flag may be updated by either a
1695 HW_Pin or through the TSC_PhysicalPresence command, but gated by persistent control
1696 flags and a temporal lock. Observe, the reverse logic surrounding the use of
1697 TSC_PhysicalPresence command. When the physicalPresenceCMDEnable flag is set, and
1698 the physicalPresenceCMDEnableV is not set, and the TSCPhysicalPresence command may
1699 execute.

1700 The physicalPresenceV flag may be overridden by unambiguous physical presence.
1701 Conceptually, the use of dedicated electrical hardware providing a trusted path to the
1702 Operator has higher precedence than the physicalPresenceV flag value. Implementers
1703 should take this into consideration when implementing physical presence indicators.

1704 **End of informative comment**

- 1705 1. The requirement for physical presence **MUST** be met by the platform manufacturer
1706 using some physical mechanism.
- 1707 2. It **SHALL** be impossible to intercept or subvert indication of physical presence to the
1708 TPM by the execution of software on the platform.

1709 **11. Root of Trust for Reporting (RTR)**

1710 **Start of informative comment**

1711 The RTR is responsible for establishing platform identities, reporting platform
1712 configurations, protecting reported values and establishing a context for attesting to
1713 reported values. The RTR shares responsibility of protecting measurement digests with the
1714 RTS.

1715 The interaction between the RTR and RTS is a critical component. The design and
1716 implementation of the interaction between the RTR and RTS should mitigate observation
1717 and tampering with the messages. It is strongly encouraged that the RTR and RTS
1718 implementation occur in the same package such there are no external observation points.
1719 For a silicon based TPM this would imply that the RTR and RTS are in the same silicon
1720 package with no external busses.

1721 **End of informative comment**

- 1722 1. An instantiation of the RTS and RTR SHALL do the following:
- 1723 a. Be resistant to all forms of software attack and to the forms of physical attack
1724 implied by the platform's Protection Profile
 - 1725 b. Supply an accurate digest of all sequences of presented integrity metrics

1726 **11.1 Platform Identity**

1727 **Start of informative comment**

1728 The RTR is a cryptographic identity in use to distinguish and authenticate an individual
1729 TPM. The TPM uses the RTR to provide As the RTR is cryptographically unique the use of
1730 the RTR must only occur in controlled circumstances.

1731 In the TPM, the Endorsement Key (EK) is the RTR.

1732 Prior to any use of the TPM, the RTR must be instantiated. Instantiation may occur during
1733 TPM manufacturing or platform manufacturing. The business issues and manufacturing
1734 flow determines how a specific TPM and platform is personalized.

1735 The EK is cryptographically unique and bound to the TPM.

1736 The EK is only available for two operations: establishing the TPM Owner and establishing
1737 Attestation Identity Key (AIK) values and credentials. There is a prohibition on the use of the
1738 EK for any other operation.

1739 **End of informative comment**

- 1740 1. The RTR MUST have a cryptographic identity.
- 1741 a. The cryptographic identity of the RTR is the Endorsement Key (EK).
- 1742 2. The EK MUST be
- 1743 a. Statistically unique
 - 1744 b. Difficult to forge or counterfeit
 - 1745 c. Verifiable during the AIK creation process
- 1746 3. The EK SHALL only participate in

- 1747 a. TPM Ownership insertion
- 1748 b. AIK creation and verification

1749 11.2 RTR to Platform Binding

1750 Start of informative comment

1751 When performing validation of the EK and the platform the challenger wishes to have
1752 knowledge of the binding of RTR to platform. The RTR is bound to a TPM hence if the
1753 platform can show the binding of TPM to platform the challenger can reasonably believe the
1754 RTR and platform binding.

1755 The TPM cannot provide all of the information necessary for the challenger to trust in the
1756 binding. That information comes from the manufacturing process and occurs outside the
1757 control of the TPM.

1758 End of informative comment

- 1759 1. The EK is transitively bound to the Platform via the TPM as follows:
 - 1760 a. An EK is bound to one and only one TPM (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence
1761 between an Endorsement Key and a TPM.)
 - 1762 b. A TPM is bound to one and only one Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one
1763 correspondence between a TPM and a Platform.)
 - 1764 c. Therefore, an EK is bound to a Platform. (i.e., there is a one to one correspondence
1765 between an Endorsement Key and a Platform.)

1766 11.3 Platform Identity and Privacy Considerations

1767 Start of informative comment

1768 The uniqueness property of cryptographic identities raises concerns that use of that identity
1769 could result in aggregation of activity logs. Analysis of the aggregated activity could reveal
1770 personal information that a user of a platform would not otherwise approve for distribution
1771 to the aggregators. Both EK and AIK identities have this property.

1772 To counter undesired aggregation, TCG encourages the use of domain specific AIK keys and
1773 restricts the use of the EK key. The platform owner controls generation and distribution of
1774 AIK public keys.

1775 If a digital signature was performed by the EK, then any entity could track the use of the
1776 EK. So use of the EK as a signature is cryptographically sound, but this does not ensure
1777 privacy. Therefore, a mechanism to allow verifiers (human or machine) to determine that
1778 the TPM really signed the message without using the EK is required.

1779 End of informative comment

1780 11.4 Attestation Identity Keys

1781 Start of informative comment

1782 An Attestation Identity Key (AIK) is an alias for the EK. AIK provide signatures and not
1783 encryption. The TPM can create a virtually unlimited number of AIK.

1784 The AIK must contain identification such that the TPM can properly enforce the restrictions
1785 placed on an AIK.

1786 The AIK is an asymmetric key pair. For interoperability, the AIK is an RSA 2048-bit key. The
1787 TPM must protect the private portion of the asymmetric key and ensure that the value is
1788 never exposed.

1789 The AIK only signs PCR data. The TPM must enforce this restriction. If the AIK did sign
1790 additional information, it is possible for an attacker to create a block of data that appears to
1791 be a PCR value. By enforcing the PCR restriction this attack is never possible.

1792 **End of informative comment**

1793 1. The TPM MUST permanently mark an AIK such that all subsequent uses of the AIK the
1794 AIK restrictions are enforced.

1795 2. An AIK MUST be:

1796 a. Statistically unique

1797 b. Difficult to forge or counterfeit

1798 c. Verifiable to challengers

1799 3. For interoperability the AIK MUST be

1800 a. An RSA 2048-bit key

1801 4. The AIK MUST only sign data generated by the TPM

1802 **11.4.1 AIK Creation**

1803 **Start of informative comment**

1804 As the AIK is an alias for the EK, the AIK creation process requires TPM Owner
1805 authorization. The process actually requires two TPM Owner authorizations; creation and
1806 credential activation.

1807 The credential creation process is outside the control of the TPM; however, the entity
1808 identification that will create the credential must occur during the creation process.

1809 **End of informative comment**

1810 1. The TPM Owner MUST authorize the AIK creation process.

1811 2. The TPM MUST use a protected function to perform the AIK creation.

1812 3. The TPM Owner MUST indicate the entity that will provide the AIK credential as part of
1813 the AIK creation process.

1814 4. The TPM Owner MAY indicate that NO credential will ever be created. If the TPM Owner
1815 does indicate that no credential will be provided the TPM MUST ensure that no
1816 credential can be created.

1817 5. The TTP MAY apply policies to determine if the presented AIK should be granted a
1818 credential.

1819 6. The credential request package MUST be useable by only the PrivacyCA selected by the
1820 TPM Owner.

- 1821 7. The AIK credential MUST be only obtainable by the TPM that created the AIK credential
1822 request.

1823 11.4.2 AIK Storage

1824 **Start of informative comment**

1825 The AIK may be stored on some general-purpose storage device.

1826 When held outside of the TPM the AIK sensitive data must be encrypted and integrity
1827 protected.

1828 **End of informative comment**

- 1829 1. When held outside of the TPM AIK encryption and integrity protection MUST protect the
1830 AIK sensitive information
- 1831 2. The migration of AIK from one TPM to another MUST be prohibited

1832 **12. Root of Trust for Storage (RTS)**

1833 **Start of informative comment**

1834 The RTS provides protection on data in use by the TPM but held in external storage devices.
1835 The RTS provides confidentiality and integrity for the external blobs.

1836 The RTS also provides the mechanism to ensure that the release of information only occurs
1837 in a named environment. The naming of an environment uses the PCR selection to
1838 enumerate the values.

1839 Data protected by the RTS can migrate to other TPM.

1840 **End of informative comment**

- 1841 1. The number and size of values held by the RTS SHOULD be limited only by the volume
1842 of storage available on the platform
- 1843 2. The TPM MUST ensure that TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> tpmProof is only inserted into
1844 TPM internally generated and non-migratable information.

1845 **12.1 Loading and Unloading Blobs**

1846 **Start of informative comment**

1847 The TPM provides several commands to store and load RTS controlled data.

	Class	Command	Analog	Comment
1	Data / Internal / TPM	TPM_MakeIdentity	TPM_ActivateIdentity	Special purpose data
2	Data / External / TPM	TSS_Bind	TPM_Unbind	
3	Data / Internal / PCR	TPM_Seal	TPM_Unseal	
4	Data / External / PCR			
5	Key / Internal / TPM	TPM_CreateWrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
6	Key / External / TPM	TSS_WrapKey	TPM_LoadKey	
7	Key / Internal / PCR			
8	Key / External / PCR	TSS_WrapKeyToPcr	TPM_LoadKey	

1848 **13. Transport Sessions and Authorization Protocols**

1849 **Start of informative comment**

1850 The purpose of the authorization protocols and mechanisms is to prove to the TPM that the
1851 requestor has permission to perform a function and use some object. The proof comes from
1852 the knowledge of a shared secret.

1853 AuthData is available for the TPM Owner and each entity (keys, for example) that the TPM
1854 controls. The AuthData for the TPM Owner and the SRK are held within the TPM itself and
1855 the AuthData for other entities are held with the entity.

1856 The TPM Owner AuthData allows the Owner to prove ownership of the TPM. Proving
1857 ownership of the TPM does not immediately allow all operations – the TPM Owner is not a
1858 “super user” and additional AuthData must be provided for each entity or operation that
1859 has protection.

1860 The TPM treats knowledge of the AuthData as complete proof of ownership of the entity. No
1861 other checks are necessary. The requestor (any entity that wishes to execute a command on
1862 the TPM or use a specific entity) may have additional protections and requirements where
1863 he or she (or it) saves the AuthData; however, the TPM places no additional requirements.

1864 There are three protocols to securely pass a proof of knowledge of AuthData from requestor
1865 to TPM; the “Object-Independent Authorization Protocol” (OIAP), the “Object-Specific
1866 Authorization Protocol” (OSAP) and the “Delegate-Specific Authorization Protocol” (DSAP).
1867 The OIAP supports multiple authorization sessions for arbitrary entities. The OSAP
1868 supports an authentication session for a single entity and enables the confidential
1869 transmission of new authorization information. The DSAP supports the delegation of owner
1870 or entity authorization.

1871 New authorization information is inserted by the “AuthData Insertion Protocol” (ADIP)
1872 during the creation of an entity. The “AuthData Change Protocol” (ADCP) and the
1873 “Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol” (AACCP) allow the changing of the AuthData for
1874 an entity. The protocol definitions allow expansion of protocol types to additional TCG
1875 required protocols and vendor specific protocols.

1876 The protocols use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This requires that a nonce from one side be in
1877 use only for a message and its reply. For instance, the TPM would create a nonce and send
1878 that on a reply. The requestor would receive that nonce and then include it in the next
1879 request. The TPM would validate that the correct nonce was in the request and then create
1880 a new nonce for the reply. This mechanism is in place to prevent replay attacks and man-
1881 in-the-middle attacks.

1882 The basic protocols do not provide long-term protection of AuthData that is the hash of a
1883 password or other low-entropy entities. The TPM designer and application writer must
1884 supply additional protocols if protection of these types of data is necessary.

1885 The design criterion of the protocols is to allow for ownership authentication, command and
1886 parameter authentication and prevent replay and man-in-the-middle attacks.

1887 The passing of the AuthData, nonces and other parameters must follow specific guidelines
1888 so that commands coming from different computer architectures will interoperate properly.

1889 **End of informative comment**

1890 1. AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols

- 1891 a. OIAP
- 1892 b. OSAP
- 1893 c. DSAP
- 1894 2. Entity creation MUST use one of the following protocols
- 1895 a. ADIP
- 1896 3. Changing AuthData MUST use one of the following protocols
- 1897 a. ADCP
- 1898 b. AACP
- 1899 4. The TPM MAY support additional protocols to authenticate, insert and change
- 1900 AuthData.
- 1901 5. When a command has more than one AuthData value
- 1902 a. Each AuthData MUST use the same SHA-1 of the parameters
- 1903 6. Keys MAY specify AuthDataUsage -> TPM_AUTH_NEVER
- 1904 a. If the caller changes the tag from TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_xxx to
- 1905 TPM_TAG_RQU_XXX the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
- 1906 b. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1
- 1907 i. The TPM will compute the AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData
- 1908 location within the key, IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag.
- 1909 c. Users may choose to use a well-known value for the AuthData when setting
- 1910 AuthDataUsage to NEVER.
- 1911 d. If a key has AuthDataUsage set to TPM_AUTH_ALWAYS but is received in a
- 1912 command with the tag TPM_TAG_RQU_COMMAND, the command MUST return an
- 1913 error code.
- 1914 7. For commands that normally have 2 authorization sessions, if the tag specifies only one
- 1915 in the parameter array, then the first session listed is ignored (authDataUsage must be
- 1916 NEVER for this key) and the incoming session data is used for the second auth session
- 1917 in the list.
- 1918 8. Keys MAY specify AuthDataUsage -> TPM_AUTH_PRIV_USE_ONLY
- 1919 a. If the key used in a command to read/access the public portion of the key (e.g.
- 1920 TPM_CertifyKey, TPM_GetPubKey)
- 1921 i. If the caller changes the tag from TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_xxx to
- 1922 TPM_TAG_RQU_XXX the TPM SHALL ignore the AuthData values
- 1923 ii. If the caller leaves the tag as TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1
- 1924 iii. The TPM will compute the AuthData based on the value store in the AuthData
- 1925 location within the key, IGNORING the state of the AuthDataUsage flag
- 1926 b. else if the key used in command to read/access the private portion of the key(e.g.
- 1927 TPM_Sign)

- 1928 i. If the tag is TPM_TAG_RQU_COMMAND, the command MUST return an error
1929 code.

1930 13.1 Authorization Session Setup

1931 **Start of informative comment**

1932 The TPM provides two protocols for authorizing the use of entities without revealing the
1933 AuthData on the network or the connection to the TPM. In both cases, the protocol
1934 exchanges nonce-data so that both sides of the transaction can compute a hash using
1935 shared secrets and nonce-data. Each side generates the hash value and can compare to the
1936 value transmitted. Network listeners cannot directly infer the AuthData from the hashed
1937 objects sent over the network.

1938 The first protocol is the Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP), which allows the
1939 exchange of nonces with a specific TPM. Once an OIAP session is established, its nonces
1940 can be used to authorize the use of any entity managed by the TPM. The session can live
1941 indefinitely until either party requests the session termination. The TPM_OIAP function
1942 starts the OIAP session.

1943 The second protocol is the Object Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)". The OSAP allows
1944 establishment of an authentication session for a single entity. The session creates nonces
1945 that can authorize multiple commands without additional session-establishment overhead,
1946 but is bound to a specific entity. The TPM_OSAP command starts the OSAP session. The
1947 TPM_OSAP specifies the entity to which the authorization is bound.

1948 Most commands allow either form of authorization protocol. In general, however, the OIAP
1949 is preferred – it is more generally useful because it allows usage of the same session to
1950 provide authorization for different entities. The OSAP is, however, necessary for operations
1951 that set or reset AuthData.

1952 OIAP sessions were designed for reasons of efficiency; only one setup process is required for
1953 potentially many authorizations.

1954 An OSAP session is doubly efficient because only one setup process is required for
1955 potentially many authorization calculations and the entity AuthData secret is required only
1956 once. This minimizes exposure of the AuthData secret and can minimize human interaction
1957 in the case where a person supplies the AuthData information. The disadvantage of the
1958 OSAP is that a distinct session needs to be setup for each entity that requires authorization.
1959 The OSAP creates an ephemeral secret that is used throughout the session instead of the
1960 entity AuthData secret. The ephemeral secret can be used to provide confidentiality for the
1961 introduction of new AuthData during the creation of new entities. Termination of the OSAP
1962 occurs in two ways. Either side can request session termination (as usual) but the TPM
1963 forces the termination of an OSAP session after use of the ephemeral secret for the
1964 introduction of new AuthData.

1965 For both the OSAP and the OIAP, session setup is independent of the commands that are
1966 authorized. In the case of OIAP, the requestor sends the TPM_OIAP command, and with the
1967 response generated by the TPM, can immediately begin authorizing object actions. The
1968 OSAP is very similar, and starts with the requestor sending a TPM_OSAP operation, naming
1969 the entity to which the authorization session should be bound.

1970 The DSAP session is to provide delegated authorization information.

1971 All session types use a “rolling nonce” paradigm. This means that the TPM creates a new
1972 nonce value each time the TPM receives a command using the session.

1973 Example OIAP and OSAP sessions are used to illustrate session setup and use. The
1974 fictitious command named TPM_Example occupies the place where an ordinary TPM
1975 command might be used, but does not have command specific parameters. The session
1976 connects to a key object within the TPM. The key contains AuthData that will be used to
1977 secure the session.

1978 There could be as many as 2 authorization sessions applied to the execution of a single TPM
1979 command or as few as 0. The number of sessions used is determined by TCG 1.2 Command
1980 Specification and is indicated by the command ordinal parameter.

1981 It is also possible to secure authorization sessions using ephemeral shared-secrets. Rather
1982 than using AuthData contained in the stored object (e.g. key), the AuthData is supplied as a
1983 parameter to OIAP or OSAP session creation. In the examples below the key.usageAuth
1984 parameter is replaced by the ephemeral secret.

1985 **End of informative comment**

13.2 Parameter Declarations for OIAP and OSAP Examples

1986 **Start of informative comment**

1988 To follow OIAP and OSAP protocol examples (Table 13:c and Table 13:d), the reader should
1989 become familiar with the parameters declared in Table 13:a and Table 13:b.

1990 Several conventions are used in the parameter tables that may facilitate readability. The
1991 Param column (Table 13:a) identifies the sequence in which parameters are packaged into
1992 a command message as well as the size in bytes of the parameter value. The HMAC column
1993 identifies the parameters that are included in HMAC calculations including size. The Type
1994 column identifies the TCG data type corresponding to the passed value. An encapsulation of
1995 the parameter type is not part of the command message. The Name column is a fictitious
1996 variable names that aid in following the examples and descriptions.

1997 The double-lined row separator distinguishes authorization session parameters from
1998 command parameters. In Table 13:a the TPM_Example command has three parameters;
1999 keyHandle, inArgOne and inArgTwo. The tag, paramSize and ordinal parameters are
2000 message header values describing contents of a command message. The parameters below
2001 the double-lined row are OIAP / OSAP authorization session related. If a second
2002 authorization session were used, the table would show a second authorization section
2003 delineated by a second double-lined row. The authorization session parameters identify
2004 shared-secret values, session nonces, session digest and flags.

2005 In this example, a single authorization session is used signaled by the
2006 TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_COMMAND tag.

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	tag	TPM_TAG_RQU_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of input bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example

4	4			TPM_KEY_HANDLE	keyHandle	Handle of a loaded key.
5	1	2S	1	BOOL	inArgOne	The first input argument
6	20	3S	20	UINT32	inArgTwo	The second input argument.
7	4			TPM_AUTHHANDLE	authHandle	The authorization handle used for keyHandle authorization.
		2H1	20	TPM_NONCE	authLastNonceEven	Even nonce previously generated by TPM to cover inputs
8	20	3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
9	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	The continue use flag for the authorization handle
10	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	inAuth	The AuthData digest for inputs and keyHandle. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

2007
2008

Table 13:a - Authorization Protocol Input Parameters

Param		HMAC		Type	Name	Description
#	Sz	#	Sz			
1	2			TPM_TAG	Tag	TPM_TAG_RSP_AUTH1_COMMAND
2	4			UINT32	paramSize	Total number of output bytes including paramSize and tag
3	4	1S	4	TPM_RESULT	returnCode	The return code of the operation. See section 4.3.
		2S	4	TPM_COMMAND_CODE	ordinal	Command ordinal, fixed value of TPM_Example
4	4	3S	4	UINT32	outArgOne	Output argument
5	20	2 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceEven	Even nonce newly generated by TPM to cover outputs
		3 H1	20	TPM_NONCE	nonceOdd	Nonce generated by system associated with authHandle
6	1	4 H1	1	BOOL	continueAuthSession	Continue use flag, TRUE if handle is still active
7	20			TPM_AUTHDATA	resAuth	The AuthData digest for the returned parameters. HMAC key: key.usageAuth.

2009

Table 13:b - Authorization Protocol Output Parameters

2010
2011
2012

End of informative comment

2013 **13.2.1 Object-Independent Authorization Protocol (OIAP)**

2014 **Start of informative comment**

2015 The purpose of this section is to describe the authorization-related actions of a TPM when it
2016 receives a command that has been authorized with the OIAP protocol. OIAP uses the
2017 TPM_OIAP command to create the authorization session.

2018 Many commands use OIAP authorization. The following description is therefore necessarily
2019 abstract. A fictitious TPM command, TPM_Example is used to represent ordinary TPM
2020 commands.

2021 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send command TPM_Example. This is an authorized
2022 command that uses the key denoted by keyHandle. The user must know the AuthData for
2023 keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that requires authorization and this secret
2024 is used in the authorization calculation. Let us assume for this example that the caller of
2025 TPM_Example does not need to authorize the use of keyHandle for more than one
2026 command. This use model points to the selection of the OIAP as the authorization protocol.

2027 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
2028 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
2029 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

2030 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
2031 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
2032 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
2033 auth Handle, authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams
2034 refers to the following parameters, in this order: auth Handle, nonceEven, nonceOdd,
2035 continueAuthSession

2036 There are two even nonces used to execute TPM_Example, the one generated as part of the
2037 TPM_OAIP command (labeled authLastNonceEven below) and the one generated with the
2038 output arguments of TPM_Example (labeled as nonceEven below).

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OIAP	TPM_OIAP	→	Create session Create authHandle Associate session and authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven	authHandle, authLastNonceEven	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	TPM retrieves key.usageAuth (key must have been previously loaded) Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (key.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(key.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

2039 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session.
2040 For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same example command is used
2041 (ordinal = TPM_Example). However, a different key (newKey) with its own secret
2042 (newKey.usageAuth) is to be operated on. To re-use the previous session, the
2043 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

2044 The previous example shows the command execution reusing an existing authorization
2045 session. The parameters created and the wire formats of all of the information.

2046 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
2047 output parameters from the first protocol example

2048

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	TPM retrieves newKey.usageAuth (newKey must have been previously loaded) Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (newKey.usageAuth, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_E_INVALIDAUTH Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(newKey.usageAuth, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

2049 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions. Suppose,
2050 however, that the TPM user no longer requires the authorization session. There are three
2051 possibilities in this case:

2052 The user issues a TPM_Terminate_Handle command to the TPM (section 5.3).

2053 The input argument continueAuthSession can be set to FALSE for the last command. In
2054 this case, the output continueAuthSession value will be FALSE.

2055 In some cases, the TPM automatically terminates the authorization session regardless of the
2056 input value of continueAuthSession. In this case as well, the output continueAuthSession
2057 value will be FALSE.

2058 When an authorization session is terminated for any reason, the TPM invalidates the
2059 session's handle and terminates the session's thread (releases all resources allocated to the
2060 session).

2061 **End of informative comment**

2062

2063 **OIAP Actions**

- 2064 1. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command
2065 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code
2066 TPM_INVALID_AUTHHANDLE
- 2067 2. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the caller's nonce (nonceOdd) and
2068 continueAuthSession flag from the input parameter list, and store it in internal TPM
2069 memory with the authSession 'H'.
- 2070 3. The TPM SHALL retrieve the latest version of the TPM's nonce stored with the
2071 authorization session H (authLastNonceEven) computed during the previously executed
2072 command.
- 2073 4. The TPM MUST retrieve the secret AuthData (SecretE, say) of the target entity. The
2074 entity and its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.
- 2075 5. The TPM SHALL perform a HMAC calculation using the entity secret data, ordinal, input
2076 command parameters and authorization parameters according to previously specified
2077 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- 2078 6. The TPM SHALL compare HM to the AuthData value received in the input parameters. If
2079 they are different, the TPM returns the error code TPM_AUTHFAIL if the authorization
2080 session is the first session of a command, or TPM_AUTH2FAIL if the authorization
2081 session is the second session of a command. Otherwise, the TPM executes the command
2082 which (for this example) produces an output that requires authentication.
- 2083 7. The TPM SHALL generate a nonce (nonceEven).
- 2084 8. The TPM creates an HMAC digest to authenticate the return code, return values and
2085 authorization parameters to the same entity secret according to previously specified
2086 normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- 2087 9. The TPM returns the return code, output parameters, authorization parameters and
2088 AuthData digest.
- 2089 10. If the output continueUse flag is FALSE, then the TPM SHALL terminate the session.
2090 Future references to H will return an error.

2091 **13.3 Object-Specific Authorization Protocol (OSAP)**

2092 **Start of informative comment**

2093 This section describes the actions of a TPM when it receives a TPM command via OSAP
2094 session. Many TPM commands may be sent to the TPM via an OSAP session. Therefore, the
2095 following description is necessarily abstract.

2096 The OSAP session is initialized through the creation of an ephemeral secret which is used to
2097 protect session traffic. Sessions are created using the TPM_Osap command. This section
2098 illustrates OSAP using a fictitious command called TPM_Example.

2099 Assume that a TPM user wishes to send the TPM_Example command to the TPM. The
2100 keyHandle signifies that an OSAP session is being used and has the value "Auth1". The
2101 user must know the AuthData for keyHandle (key.usageAuth) as this is the entity that
2102 requires authorization and this secret is used in the authorization calculation.

2103 Let us assume that the sender needs to use this key multiple times but does not wish to
 2104 obtain the key secret more than once. This might be the case if the usage AuthData were
 2105 derived from a typed password. This use model points to the selection of the OSAP as the
 2106 authorization protocol.

2107 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
 2108 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
 2109 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

2110 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
 2111 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
 2112 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
 2113 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
 2114 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

2115 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and
 2116 nonceEven) that are used for TPM_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is
 2117 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce
 2118 generated by the system.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(key.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

	resAuth		
--	---------	--	--

2119 Table 13:c - Example OSAP Session

2120 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session

2121 to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same

2122 ordinal is to be used (TPM_Example). To re-use the previous session, the

2123 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

2124 The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire

2125 formats of all of the information.

2126 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the

2127 output parameters from the first execution of TPM_Example.

2128

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

2129 Table 13:d - Example Re-used OSAP Session

2130 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it

2131 in the ways that have been described above in TPM_OIAP. Note that termination of the

2132 OSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

2133 **End of informative comment**

2134 **OSAP Actions**

- 2135 1. The TPM MUST have been able to retrieve the shared secret (Shared, say) of the target
- 2136 entity when the authorization session was established with TPM_OSAP. The entity and
- 2137 its secret must have been previously loaded into the TPM.
- 2138 2. The TPM MUST verify that the authorization handle (H, say) referenced in the command
- 2139 points to a valid session. If it does not, the TPM returns the error code
- 2140 TPM_INVALID_AUTHHANDLE.

- 2141 3. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM1, say) of the command parameters according
2142 to previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- 2143 4. The TPM SHALL compare HM1 to the AuthData value received in the command. If they
2144 are different, the TPM returns the error code TPM_AUTHFAIL if the authorization session
2145 is the first session of a command, or TPM_AUTH2FAIL if the authorization session is the
2146 second session of a command., the TPM executes command C1 which produces an
2147 output (O, say) that requires authentication and uses a particular return code (RC, say).
- 2148 5. The TPM SHALL generate the latest version of the even nonce (nonceEven).
- 2149 6. The TPM MUST calculate the HMAC (HM2) of the return parameters according to
2150 previously specified normative regarding HMAC calculation.
- 2151 7. The TPM returns HM2 in the parameter list.
- 2152 8. The TPM SHALL retrieve the continue flag from the received command. If the flag is
2153 FALSE, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with
2154 handle H.
- 2155 9. If the shared secret was used to provide confidentiality for data in the received
2156 command, the TPM SHALL terminate the session and destroy the thread associated with
2157 handle H.
- 2158 10. Each time that access to an entity (key) is authorized using OSAP, the TPM MUST
2159 ensure that the OSAP shared secret is that derived from the entity using TPM_OSAP.

2160 13.4 Authorization Session Handles

2161 **Start of informative comment**

2162 The TPM generates authorization handles to allow for the tracking of information regarding
2163 a specific authorization invocation.

2164 The TPM saves information specific to the authorization, such as the nonce values,
2165 ephemeral secrets and type of authentication in use.

2166 The TPM may create any internal representation of the handle that is appropriate for the
2167 TPM's design. The requestor always uses the handle in the authorization structure to
2168 indicate authorization structure in use.

2169 The TPM must support a minimum of two concurrent authorization handles. The use of
2170 these handles is to allow the Owner to have an authorization active in addition to an active
2171 authorization for an entity.

2172 To ensure garbage collection and the proper removal of security information, the requestor
2173 should terminate all handles. Termination of the handle uses the continue-use flag to
2174 indicate to the TPM that the handle should be terminated.

2175 Termination of a handle instructs the TPM to perform garbage collection on all AuthData.
2176 Garbage collection includes the deletion of the ephemeral secret.

2177 **End of informative comment**

- 2178 1. The TPM MUST support authorization handles. The TPM MUST support a minimum of
2179 three concurrent authorization handles.

2180 2. The TPM MUST support authorization-handle termination. The termination includes
2181 secure deletion of all authorization session information.

2182 **13.5 Authorization-Data Insertion Protocol (ADIP)**

2183 **Start of informative comment**

2184 The creation of AuthData is the responsibility of the entity owner. He or she may use
2185 whatever process he or she wishes. The transmission of the AuthData from the owner to the
2186 TPM requires confidentiality and integrity. The encryption of the AuthData meets these
2187 requirements. The confidentiality and integrity requirements assume the insertion of the
2188 AuthData occurs over a network. While local insertions of the data would not require these
2189 measures, the protocol is established to be consistent with both local and remote insertions.

2190 When the requestor is sending the AuthData to the TPM, the command to load the data
2191 requires the authorization of the entity owner. For example, to create a new TPM ID and set
2192 its AuthData requires the AuthData of the TPM Owner.

2193 The confidentiality of the transmission comes from the encryption of the AuthData, and the
2194 integrity comes from the ability of the owner to verify that the authorization is being sent to
2195 a TPM and that only a specific TPM can decrypt the data.

2196 The mechanism uses the following features of the TPM, OSAP and HMAC.

2197 The creation of a new entity requires the authorization of the entity owner. When the
2198 requestor starts the creation process, the creator must use OSAP.

2199 The creator builds an encryption key using a SHA-1 hash of the shared secret from the
2200 OSAP mechanism and the nonce (authLastNonceEven) returned by the TPM from the
2201 TPM_OSAP command.

2202 The creator encrypts the new AuthData using the key from the previous step as a one-time
2203 pad with XOR and then sends this encrypted data along with the creation request to the
2204 TPM.

2205 The TPM decrypts the AuthData using the OSAP shared secret and authLastNonceEven,
2206 creates the new entity.

2207 The TPM includes the sends the reply back to the creator using the new AuthData as the
2208 secret value of the HMAC.

2209 The creator believes that the OSAP creates a shared secret known only to the creator and
2210 the TPM. The TPM believes that the creator is the entity owner by their knowledge of the
2211 parent entity AuthData. The creator believes that the process completed correctly and that
2212 the AuthData is correct because the HMAC will only verify with the OSAP secret.

2213 The ADIP allows for the creation of new entities and the secure insertion of the new entity
2214 AuthData. The transmission of the new AuthData uses encryption with the key being a
2215 shared secret of an OSAP session.

2216 The OSAP session must be created using the owner of the new entity.

2217 In the following example, we want to send the previously described command
2218 TPM_EXAMPLE to create a new entity. In the example, we assume there is a third input
2219 parameter newAuth, and that one of the input parameters is named parentHandle to
2220 reference the parent for the new entity (TPM Owner in some circumstances such as the SRK
2221 and its children, otherwise a key).

2222

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_OSAP	TPM_OSAP parentHandle nonceOddOSAP	→	Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save parentHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(parent.usageAuth, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute input parameter newAuth = XOR(entityAuthData, SHA1(sharedSecret, authLastNonceEven)) Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal keyHandle inArgOne inArgTwo newAuth authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Compute entityAuthData = XOR(newAuth, SHA1(sharedSecret, authLastNonceEven)) Execute TPM_Example, create entity and build returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)

2223

Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters Destroy auth session associated with authHandle
--	--	---	---

2224 Table 13:e - Example ADIP Session

2225

2226 **End of informative comment**

- 2227 1. The TPM MUST enable ADIP by using the OSAP. The TPM MUST encrypt the AuthData
 2228 for the new entity by performing an XOR using the shared secret created by the OSAP.
 2229 2. The TPM MUST destroy the OSAP session whenever a new entity is created.

2230 **13.6 AuthData Change Protocol (ADCP)**

2231 **Start of informative comment**

2232 All entities from the Owner to the SRK to individual keys and data blobs have AuthData.
 2233 This data may need to change at some point in time after the entity creation. The ADCP
 2234 allows the entity owner to change the AuthData. The entity owner of a wrapped key is the
 2235 owner of the parent key.

2236 A requirement is that the owner must remember the old AuthData. The only mechanism to
 2237 change the AuthData when the entity owner forgets the current value is to delete the entity
 2238 and then recreate it.

2239 To protect the data from exposure to eavesdroppers or other attackers, the AuthData uses
 2240 the same encryption mechanism in use during the ADIP.

2241 Changing AuthData requires opening two authentication handles. The first handle
 2242 authenticates the entity owner (or parent) and the right to load the entity. This first handle
 2243 is an OSAP and supplies the data to encrypt the new AuthData according to the ADIP
 2244 protocol. The second handle can be either an OIAP or an OSAP, it authorizes access to the
 2245 entity for which the AuthData is to be changed.

2246 The AuthData in use to generate the OSAP shared secret must be the AuthData of the
 2247 parent of the entity to which the change will be made.

2248 When changing the AuthData for the SRK, the first handle OSAP must be setup using the
 2249 TPM Owner AuthData. This is because the SRK does not have a parent, per se.

2250 If the SRKAuth data is known to userA and userB, userA can snoop on userB while userB
 2251 is changing the AuthData for a child of the SRK, and deduce the child's newAuth.
 2252 Therefore, if SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart and
 2253 TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish are preferred over TPM_ChangeAuth when changing
 2254 AuthData for children of the SRK.

2255 This applies to all children of the SRK, including TPM identities.

2256 **End of informative comment**

- 2257 1. Changing AuthData for the TPM SHALL require authorization of the current TPM Owner.
2258 2. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL require authorization of the TPM Owner.
2259 3. If SRKAuth is a well known value, TPM_ChangeAuth SHOULD NOT be used to change
2260 the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.
2261 4. All other entities SHALL require authorization of the parent entity.

2262 13.7 Asymmetric Authorization Change Protocol (AACP)

2263 **Start of informative comment**

2264 This is now deprecated. Use the normal change session inside of a transport session with
2265 confidentiality.

2266 This asymmetric change protocol allows the entity owner to change entity authorization,
2267 under the parent's execution authorization, to a value of which the parent has no
2268 knowledge.

2269 In contrast, the TPM_ChangeAuth command uses the parent entity AuthData to create the
2270 shared secret that encrypts the new AuthData for an entity. This creates a situation where
2271 the parent entity ALWAYS knows the AuthData for entities in the tree below the parent.
2272 There may be instances where this knowledge is not a good policy.

2273 This asymmetric change process requires two commands and the use of an authorization
2274 session.

2275 **End of informative comment**

- 2276 1. Changing AuthData for the SRK SHALL involve authorization by the TPM Owner.
2277 2. If SRKAuth is a well known value,
2278 3. TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart and TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish SHOULD be used to
2279 change the AuthData value of a child of the SRK, including the TPM identities.
2280 4. All other entities SHALL involve authorization of the parent entity.

2281 **14. FIPS 140 Physical Protection**

2282 **Start of informative comment**

2283 The FIPS 140-2 program provides assurance that a cryptographic device performs properly.
2284 It is appropriate for TPM vendors to attempt to obtain FIPS 140-2 certification.

2285 The TPM design should be such that the TPM vendor has the opportunity of obtaining FIPS
2286 140-2 certification.

2287 **End of informative comment**

2288 **14.1 TPM Profile for FIPS Certification**

2289 **Start of informative comment**

2290 The FIPS mode of the TPM does require some changes over the normal TPM. These changes
2291 are listed here such that there is a central point of determining the necessary FIPS changes.

2292 **Key creation and use**

2293 TPM_LoadKey, TPM_CMK_CreateKey and TPM_CreateWrapKey changed to disallow the
2294 creation or loading of AUTH_NEVER, legacy and keys less than 1024 bits.
2295 TPM_MakeIdentity changed to disallow AUTH_NEVER.

2296 **End of informative comment**

2297 1. Each TPM Protected Capability MUST be designed such that some profile of the
2298 Capability is capable of obtaining FIPS 140-2 certification

2299 15. Maintenance

2300 **Start of informative comment**

2301 The maintenance feature is a vendor-specific feature, and its implementation is vendor-
2302 specific. The implementation must, however, meet the minimum security requirements so
2303 that implementations of the maintenance feature do not result in security weaknesses.

2304 There is no requirement that the maintenance feature is available, but if it is implemented,
2305 then the requirements must be met.

2306 The maintenance feature described in the specification is an example only, and not the only
2307 mechanism that a manufacturer could implement that meets these requirements.

2308 Maintenance is different from backup/migration, because maintenance provides for the
2309 migration of both migratory and non-migratory data. Maintenance is an optional TPM
2310 function, but if a TPM enables maintenance, the maintenance capabilities in this
2311 specification are mandatory – no other migration capabilities shall be used. Maintenance
2312 necessarily involves the manufacturer of a Subsystem.

2313 When maintaining computer systems, it is sometimes the case that a manufacturer or its
2314 representative needs to replace a Subsystem containing a TPM. Some manufacturers
2315 consider it a requirement that there be a means of doing this replacement without the loss
2316 of the non-migrational keys held by the original TPM.

2317 The owner and users of TCG platforms need assurance that the data within protected
2318 storage is adequately protected against interception by third parties or the manufacturer.

2319 This process **MUST** only be performed between two platforms of the same manufacturer and
2320 model. If the maintenance feature is supported, this section defines the required functions
2321 defined at a high level. The final function definitions and entire maintenance process is left
2322 to the manufacturer to define within the constraints of these high level functions.

2323 Any maintenance process must have certain properties. Specifically, any migration to a
2324 replacement Subsystem must require collaboration between the Owner of the existing
2325 Subsystem and the manufacturer of the existing Subsystem. Further, the procedure must
2326 have adequate safeguards to prevent a non-migrational key being transferred to multiple
2327 Subsystems.

2328 The maintenance capabilities `TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive` and
2329 `TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive` enable the transfer of all Protected Storage data from a
2330 Subsystem containing a first TPM (TPM₁) to a Subsystem containing a second TPM (TPM₂):

2331 A manufacturer places a public key in non-volatile storage into its TPMs at manufacture
2332 time.

2333 The Owner of TPM₁ uses `TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive` to create a maintenance archive
2334 that enables the migration of all data held in Protected Storage by TPM₁. The Owner of TPM₁
2335 must provide his or her authorization to the Subsystem. The TPM then creates the
2336 `TPM_MIGRATE_ASYMKEY` structure and follows the process defined.

2337 The XOR process prevents the manufacturer from ever obtaining plaintext TPM₁ data.

2338 The additional random data provides a means to assure that a maintenance process cannot
2339 subvert archive data and hide such subversion.

2340 The random mask can be generated by two methods, either using the TPM RNG or MGF1 on
2341 the TPM Owners AuthData.

2342 The manufacturer takes the maintenance blob, decrypts it with its private key, and satisfies
2343 itself that the data bundle represents data from that Subsystem manufactured by that
2344 manufacturer. Then the manufacturer checks the endorsement certificate of TPM₂ and
2345 verifies that it represents a platform to which data from TPM₁ may be moved.

2346 The manufacturer dispatches two messages.

2347 The first message is made available to CAs, and is a revocation of the TPM₁ endorsement
2348 certificate.

2349 The second message is sent to the Owner of TPM₂, which will communicate the SRK,
2350 tpmProof and the manufacturer's permission to install the maintenance blob only on TPM₂

2351 The Owner uses TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive to install the archive copy into TPM₂, and
2352 overwrite the existing TPM₂-SRK and TPM₂-tpmProof in TPM₂. TPM₂ overwrites TPM₂-SRK
2353 with TPM₁-SRK, and overwrites TPM₂-tpmProof with TPM₁-tpmProof.

2354 Note that the command TPM_KillMaintenanceFeature prevents the operation of
2355 TPM_CreateMaintenanceArchive and TPM_LoadMaintenanceArchive. This enables an Owner
2356 to block maintenance (and hence the migration of non-migratory data) either to or from a
2357 TPM.

2358 It is required that a manufacturer takes steps that prevent further access of migrated data
2359 by TPM₁. This may be achieved by deleting the existing Owner from TPM₁, for example.

2360 For the manufacturer to validate that the maintenance blob is coming from a valid TPM, the
2361 manufacturer can require that a TPM identity sign the maintenance blob. The identity
2362 would be from a CA under the control of the manufacturer and hence the manufacturer
2363 would be satisfied that the blob is from a valid TPM.

2364 **End of informative comment**

2365 1. The maintenance feature MUST ensure that the information can be on only one TPM at
2366 a time. Maintenance MUST ensure that at no time the process will expose a shielded
2367 location. Maintenance MUST require the active participation of the Owner.

2368 2. Any migration of non-migratory data protected by a Subsystem SHALL require the
2369 cooperation of both the Owner of that non-migratory data and the manufacturer of that
2370 Subsystem. That manufacturer SHALL NOT cooperate in a maintenance process unless
2371 the manufacturer is satisfied that non-migratory data will exist in exactly one
2372 Subsystem. A TPM SHALL NOT provide capabilities that support migration of non-
2373 migratory data unless those capabilities are described in the TCG specification.

2374 3. The maintenance feature MUST move the following

2375 4. TPM_KEY for SRK. The maintenance process will reset the SRK AuthData to match the
2376 TPM Owners AuthData

2377 5. TPM_PERMANENT_DATA -> tpmProof

2378 6. TPM Owner's authorization

2379 **15.1 Field Upgrade**

2380 **Start of informative comment**

2381 A TPM, once in the field, may need to update the protected capabilities. This command,
2382 which is optional, provides the mechanism to perform the update.

2383 **End of informative comment**

2384 The TPM SHOULD have provisions for upgrading the subsystem after shipment from the
2385 manufacturer. If provided the mechanism MUST implement the following guidelines:

2386 1. The upgrade mechanisms in the TPM MUST not require the TPM to hold a global secret.
2387 The definition of global secret is a secret value shared by more than one TPM.

2388 2. The TPM is not allowed to pre-store or use unique identifiers in the TPM for the purpose
2389 of field upgrade. The TPM MUST NOT use the endorsement key for identification or
2390 encryption in the upgrade process. The upgrade process MAY use a TPM Identity (AIK) to
2391 deliver upgrade information to specific TPM devices.

2392 3. The upgrade process can only change protected-capabilities.

2393 4. The upgrade process can only access data in shielded-locations where this data is
2394 necessary to validate the TPM Owner, validate the TPME and manipulate the blob

2395 5. The TPM MUST conform to the TCG specification, protection profiles and security targets
2396 after the upgrade. The upgrade MAY NOT decrease the security values from the original
2397 security target.

2398 6. The security target used to evaluate this TPM MUST include this command in the TOE.

2399

16. Proof of Locality

2400

Start of informative comment

2401

When a platform is designed with a trusted process, the trusted process may wish to communicate with the TPM and indicate that the command is coming from the trusted process. The definition of a trusted process is a platform specific issue.

2402

2403

2404

The commands that the trusted process sends to the TPM are the normal TPM commands with a modifier that indicates that the trusted process initiated the command. The TPM accepts the command as coming from the trusted process merely due to the fact that the modifier is set. The TPM itself is not responsible how the signal is asserted; only that it honors the assertions. The TPM cannot verify the validity of the modifier.

2405

2406

2407

2408

2409

The definition of the modifier is a platform specific issue. Depending on the platform the modifier could be a special bus cycle or additional input pins on the TPM. The assumption is that to spoof the modifier to the TPM requires more than just a simple hardware attack but would require expertise and possibly special hardware. One example would be special cycles on the LPC bus that inform the TPM it is under the control of a process on the PC platform.

2410

2411

2412

2413

2414

2415

To allow for multiple mechanisms and for finer grained reporting the TPM will include 4 locality modifiers. These four modifiers allow the platform specific specification to properly indicate exactly what is occurring and for TPM's to properly respond to locality.

2416

2417

2418

End of informative comment

2419

1. The TPM modifies the receipt of a command and indicates that the trusted process sent the command when the TPM determines that the modifier is on. The modifier MUST only affect the individual command just received and MUST NOT affect any other commands. However the TPM_ExecuteTransport MUST propagate the modifier to the wrapped command.

2420

2421

2422

2423

2424

2. A TPM platform specific specification MAY indicate the presence of a maximum of 4 local modifiers. The modifier indication uses the TPM_MODIFIER_INDICATOR structure.

2425

2426

3. The modifiers may occur singularly or in combination.

2427

4. The definition of the trusted source is in the platform specific specification.

2428

5. For ease in reading this specification the indication that the TPM has received any modifier will be LOCAL_MOD = TRUE.

2429

2430 17. Monotonic Counter

2431 **Start of informative comment**

2432 The monotonic counter provides an ever-increasing incremental value. The TPM must
2433 support at least 4 concurrent counters. Implementations inside the TPM may create 4
2434 unique counters or there may be one counter with pointers to keep track of the pointers
2435 current value. A naming convention to allow for unambiguous reference to the various
2436 components the following terms are in use:

2437 Internal Base – This is the main counter. It is in use internally by the TPM and is not
2438 directly accessible by any outside process.

2439 External Counter – A counter in use by external processes. This could be related to the
2440 main counter via pointers and difference values or it could be a totally unique value. The
2441 value of an external counter is not affected by any use, increment or deletion of any other
2442 external counter.

2443 Max Value – The max count value of all counters (internal and external). So if there were 3
2444 external counters having values of 10, 15 and 201 and the internal base having a value of
2445 201 then Max Value is 201. In the same example if the internal base was 502 then Max
2446 Value would be 502.

2447 There are two methods of obtaining an external count, signed or unsigned. The external
2448 counter must allow for 7 years of increments every 5 seconds without causing a hardware
2449 failure. The output of the counter is a 32-bit value.

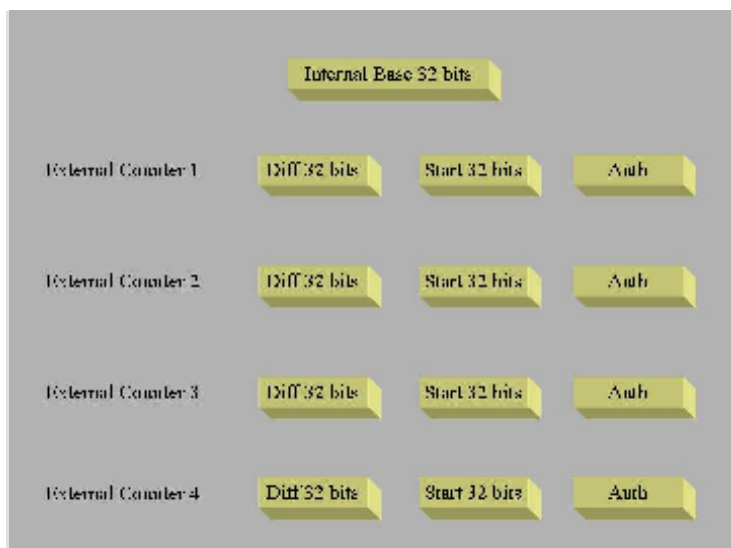
2450 The TPM may create a throttling mechanism that limits the ability to increment an external
2451 counter within a certain time range. The TPM must support an increment rate of once every
2452 5 seconds.

2453 To create an external counter requires TPM Owner authorization. To increment an external
2454 counter the command must pass authorization to use the counter.

2455 External counters can be tagged with a short text string to facilitate counter administration.

2456 Manufacturers are free to implement the monotonic counter using any mechanism.

2457 To illustrate the counters and base the following example is in use. This mechanism uses
2458 two saving values (diff and start), however this is only an example and not meant to indicate
2459 any specific implementation.



2460

2461 The internal base (IB) always moves forward and can never be reset. IB drives all external
2462 counters on the machine..

2463 The purpose of the following example is to show the two external counters always moving
2464 forward independent of the other and how the IB moves forward also.

2465 Starting condition is that IB is at 22 and no other external counters are active.

2466 Start external counter A

2467 Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 23

2468 Assign start value of A to 23 (or Max Value)

2469 Assign difference of A to 23 (we always start at current value of IB)

2470 Assign a handle for A

2471 Increment A 5 times

2472 IB is now 28

2473 Request current A value

2474 Return $28 = 28 \text{ (IB)} + 23 \text{ (difference)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

2475 Counter A has gone from the start of 23 to 28 incremented 5 times.

2476 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)

2477 Start Counter B

2478 Save A difference $28 = 23 \text{ (old difference)} + 28 \text{ (IB)} - 23 \text{ (start value)}$

2479 Increment IB (set new Max Value) IB = 29

2480 Set start value of B to 29 (or Max Value)

2481 Assign difference of B to 29

2482 Assign handle for B

2483 Increment B 8 times

2484 IB is now 37

2485 Request B value
2486 Return $37 = 37 \text{ (IB)} + 29 \text{ (difference)} - 29 \text{ (start value)}$
2487 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)
2488 Increment A
2489 Store B difference (37)
2490 Load A start value of 37
2491 Increment IB to 38
2492 Return A value
2493 Return $29 = 38 \text{ (IB)} + 28 \text{ (difference)} - 37 \text{ (start value)}$
2494
2495 Notice that A has gone from 28 to 29 which is correct, while B is at 37. Depending on the
2496 order of increments A may pass B or it may always be less than B.
2497 **End of informative comment**
2498 1. The counter MUST be designed to not wear out in the first 7 years of operation. The
2499 counter MUST be able to increment at least once every 5 seconds. The TPM, in response
2500 to operations that would violate these counter requirements, MAY throttle the counter
2501 usage (cause a delay in the use of the counter) or return the error
2502 TPM_E_COUNTERUSAGE.
2503 2. The TPM MUST support at least 4 concurrent counters.
2504 3. The establishment of a new counter MUST prevent the reuse of any previous counter
2505 value. I.E. if the TPM has 3 counters and the max value of a current counter is at 36
2506 then the establishment of a new counter would start at 37.
2507 4. After a successful TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) the first successful TPM_IncrementCounter
2508 sets the counter handle. Any attempt to issue TPM_IncrementCounter with a different
2509 handle MUST fail.
2510 5. TPM_CreateCounter does NOT set the counter handle.

2511 18. Transport Protection

2512 **Start of informative comment**

2513 The creation of sessions allows for the grouping of a set of commands into a session. The
2514 session provides a log of all commands and can provide confidentiality of the commands
2515 using the session.

2516 Session establishment creates a shared secret and then uses the shared secret to authorize
2517 and protect commands sent to the TPM using the session.

2518 After establishing the session, the caller uses the session to wrap a command to execute.
2519 The user of the transport session can wrap any command except for commands that would
2520 create nested transport sessions.

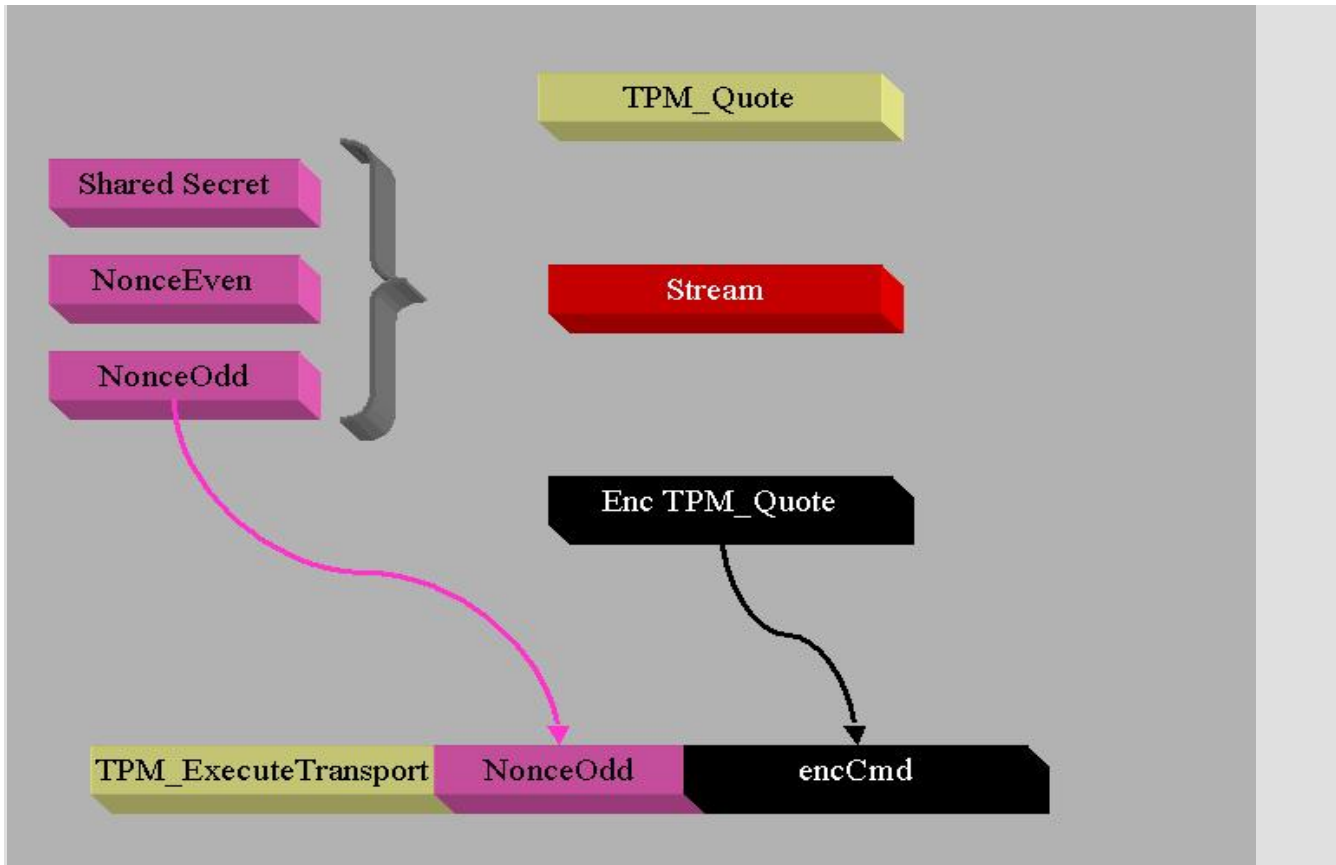
2521 The log of executed commands uses a structure that includes the parameters and current
2522 tick count. The session log provides a record of each command using the session.

2523 The transport session uses the same rolling nonce protocol that authorization sessions use.
2524 This protocol defines two nonces for each command sent to the TPM; nonceOdd provided by
2525 the caller and nonceEven generated by the TPM.

2526 For confidentiality, the caller uses the MGF1 function to create an XOR string the same size
2527 as the command to execute. The inputs to the MGF1 function are the shared secret,
2528 nonceOdd and nonceEven.

2529 There is no explicit close session as the caller can use the continueSession flag set to false
2530 to end a session. The caller can also call the sign session log which also ends the session. If
2531 the caller loses track of which sessions are active the caller should use the flush
2532 commands to regain control of the TPM resources.

2533 For an attacker to successfully break the encryption the attacker must be able to determine
2534 from a few bits what an entire SHA-1 output was. This is equivalent to breaking SHA-1. The
2535 reason that the attacker will know some bits is that the commands are in a known format.
2536 This then allows the attacker to determine what the XOR bits were. Knowledge of 159 bits of
2537 the XOR stream does not provide any greater than 50% probability of knowing the 160th bit.



2538

2539 This picture shows the protection of a TPM_Quote command. Previously executed was
2540 session establishment. The nonces in use for the TPM_Quote have no relationship with the
2541 nonces that are in use for the TPM_ExecuteTransport command.

2542 **End of informative comment**

- 2543 1. The TPM MUST support a minimum of one transport session.
- 2544 2. The TPM MUST NOT support the nesting of transport sessions. The definition of nesting
2545 is attempting to execute a wrapped command that is a transport session command. So
2546 for example when executing TPM_ExecuteTransport the wrapped command MUST not be
2547 TPM_ExecuteTransport.
- 2548 3. The TPM MUST ensure that if transport logging is active that the inclusion of the tick
2549 count in the session log does not provide information that would make a timing attack
2550 on the operations using the session more successful.
- 2551 4. The transport session can be exclusive. That is any command executed outside of the
2552 transport session will cause the invalidation of the transport session

2553 18.1 Transport encryption and authorization

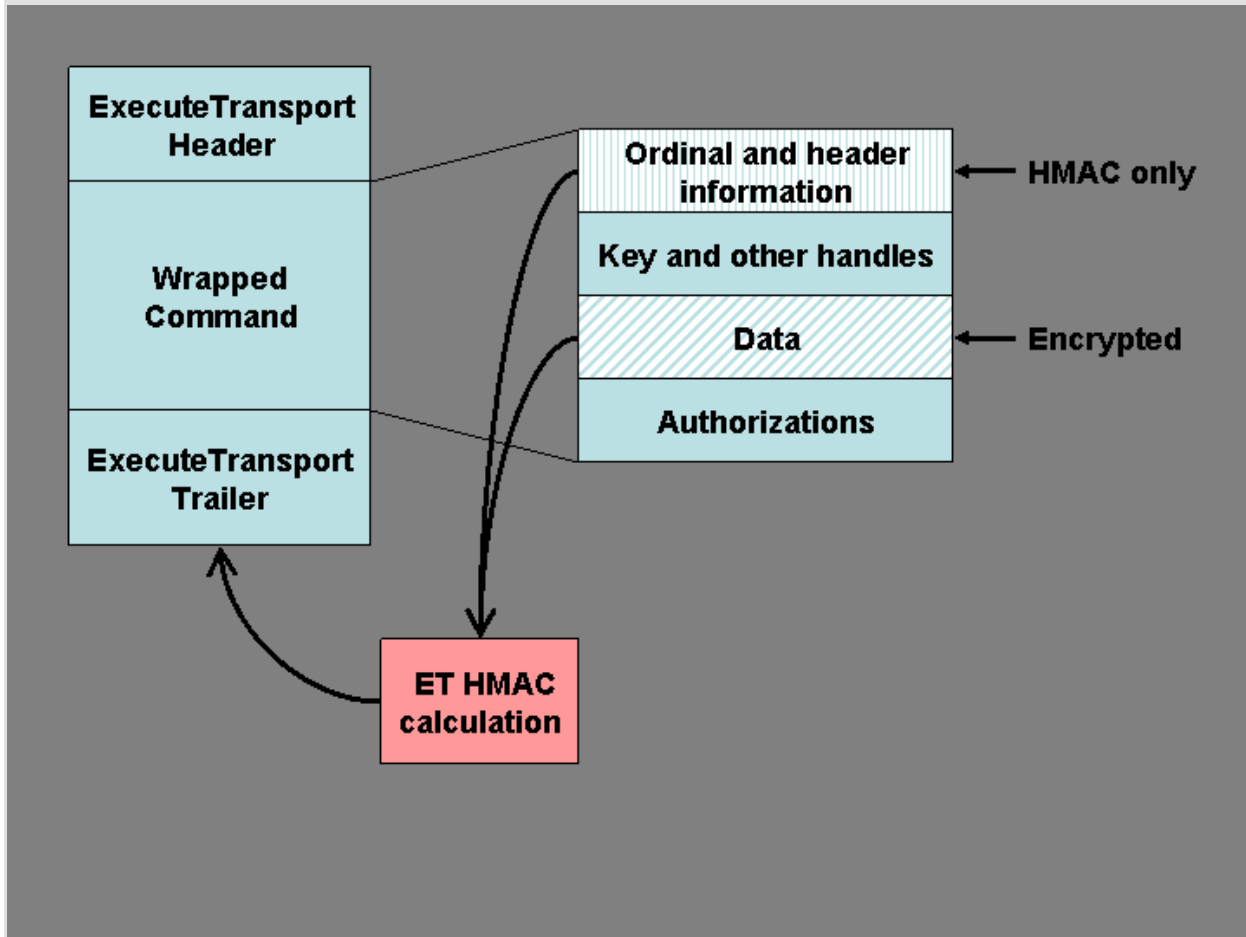
2554 **Start of informative comment**

2555 The confidentiality of the transport protection is provided by a encrypting the wrapped
2556 command. Encryption of various items in the wrapped command makes resource
2557 management of a TPM impossible. For this reason, encryption of the entire command is not

2558 possible. In addition to the encryption issue there is difficulties with creating the HMAC for
2559 the ExecuteTransport authorization.

2560 The solution to these problems is to provide limited encryption and HMAC information.

2561 The HMAC will only include two areas from the wrapped command. This is the command
2562 header information up to the handles. The format of all TPM commands is such that all
2563 handles are in the data stream prior to the payload or data. After the data comes the
2564 authorization information. To enable resource management the HMAC for the
2565 ExecuteTransport only includes the ordinal, header information and the data. The HMAC
2566 does not include handles and the authorization handles and nonces.



2567
2568 A more exact representation of the execute transport command would be the following

```

2569 *****
2570 * TAGet | LENet | ORDet | wrappedCmd | AUTHet *
2571 *****

```

2572
2573 And wrappedCmd looks like

```

2574 *****
2575 * TAGw | LENw | ORDw | HANDLESw | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *
2576 *****

```

2577

2578 The calculation for AUTHet takes as the data component of the HMAC calculation the
2579 concatenation of ORDw and DATAw. A normal HMAC calculation would have taken the
2580 entire wrappedCmd value but for the executeTransport calculation only the above two
2581 values are active. This does require the executeTransport command to parse the
2582 wrappedCmd to find the appropriate values.

2583 The data area for the HMAC calculation would then be the following:

2584 cmdData = ORDw || DATAw

2585 AUTHet = ORDet || cmdData

2586 The outgoing AUTHet creates the same cmdData by parsing the wrappedCmd and
2587 extracting the return code and data while ignoring the handles and authorizations.

2588 cmdData = RCw || DATAw

2589 AUTHet = RCet || cmdData

2590 **End of informative comment**

2591 The TPM MUST release a transport session and all information related to the session when:

2592 1. TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned executed

2593 2. TPM_ExecuteTransport executed with continueTranSession set to FALSE

2594 3. Any failure of the integrity check during execution of TPM_ExecuteTransport

2595 4. If the session has TPM_TRANSPORT_LOG set and the TPM tick session is interrupted for
2596 any reason. This is due to the return of tick values without the nonces associated with
2597 the session.

2598 5. The TPM executes some command that deactivates the TPM or removes the TPM Owner
2599 or EK.

2600 18.1.1 MGF1 parameters

2601 **Start of informative comment**

2602 MGF1 provides the confidentiality for the transport session. MGF1 is a function from PKCS
2603 1 version 2.0. This function provides a mechanism to distribute entropy over a large
2604 sequence. The sequence provides a value to XOR over the message. This in effect creates a
2605 stream cipher but not one that is available for bulk encryption.

2606 Transport confidentiality uses MGF1 as a stream cipher and obtains the entropy for each
2607 message from the following three parameters; NonceOdd, NonceEven and session AuthData.

2608 It is imperative that the stream cipher not use the same XOR sequence at any time. The
2609 following illustrates how the sequence changes for each message (both input and output).

2610 M1Input – N1, N2, Auth(N1,N2, SessionSecret)

2611 M1Output – N1, N4, Auth(N1, N4, SessionSecret)

2612 M2Input – N3, N4, Auth(N3, N4, SessionSecret)

2613 M2Output – N3, N6, Auth(N3, N6, SessionSecret)

2614 There is an issue with this sequence. If the caller does not change N1 to N3 between
2615 M1Output and M2Input then the same sequence will be generated. The TPM does not
2616 enforce the requirement to change this value so it is possible to leak information.

2617 The fix for this is to add one more parameter, the direction. So sequence is now this:

2618 M1Input – N1, N2, “in”, Auth(N1,N2, SessionSecret)

2619 M1Output – N1, N4, “out”, Auth(N1, N4, SessionSecret)

2620 M2Input – N3, N4, “in”, Auth(N3, N4, SessionSecret)

2621 M2Output – N3, N6, “out”, Auth(N3, N6, SessionSecret)

2622 Where 1 indicates the in direction and 2 indicates the out direction.

2623 Notice the calculation for M1Output uses a 2 and M2Input uses a 1, so if the caller makes a
2624 mistake and does not change NonceOdd the sequence will still be different.

2625 NonceEven is under control of the TPM and is always changing so there is no need to worry
2626 about NonceEven not changing.

2627 **End of informative comment**

2628 **18.1.2 HMAC calculation**

2629 **Start of informative comment**

2630 The HMAC calculation on for transports presents some issues with what should and should
2631 not be in the calculation. The idea is to create a calculation for the wrapped command and
2632 add that to the wrapper.

2633 So the data area for a wrapped command is not entirely HMAC'd like a normal command
2634 would be.

2635 The process will be calculate the value for the wrapped command according to the normal
2636 rules of command HMAC calculations and treat the SHA-1 value of the wrapped commands
2637 parameters and ordinals and treat that value as the 3S parameter in the calculation.

2638 Example using a wrapped TPM_LoadKey command

2639 Calculate the SHA-1 value for the TPM_LoadKey command (ordinal and data) as per the
2640 normal HMAC rules. Take the digest and use that value as the data value for the
2641 executeTransport HMAC calculation.

2642 **End of informative comment**

2643 **18.1.3 Transport log creation**

2644 **Start of informative comment**

2645 The log of information that a transport session creates needs a mechanism to tie any keys
2646 in use during the session to the session. As the HMAC and encryption for the command
2647 specifically exclude handles there is no direct way to create the binding.

2648 When creating the input log, if the first handle found points to a key, the hash of the public
2649 key is added to the log. The session owner knows the value of any keys in use and hence
2650 can still create a log that shows the values used by the log and can validate the session.

2651 A specific example using UNSEAL is shown

```
2652 *****  
2653 * TAGet | LENet | ORDet | wrappedCmd | AUTHet *  
2654 *****  
2655 TPM_REQ_AUTH1_COMMAND  
2656 xx len  
2657 TPM_ORD_EXECUTE_TRANSPORT  
2658 wrappedCmd  
2659 AUTHet  
2660
```

And wrappedCmd looks like

```
2662 *****  
2663 * TAGw | LENw | ORDw | HANDLESw | DATAw | AUTH1w (o) | AUTH2w (o) *  
2664 *****  
2665 TPM_REQ_AUTH1_COMMAND  
2666 Xx len  
2667 TPM_ORD_UNSEAL  
2668 parentHandle  
2669 inData  
2670 AUTH1w  
2671 AUTH2w
```

When creating the transport input log the TPM will create a hash of the ordinal || inData parameters and then append to that value the hash of the ordinal || key pointed to by parentHandle.

End of informative comment

18.1.4 Additional Encryption Mechanisms

Start of informative comment

The TPM can optionally implement alternate algorithms for the encryption of commands sent to the TPM_ExecuteTransport command. The designation of the algorithm uses the TPM_KEY_PARMS element of the TPM_TRANSPORT_PUBLIC parameter of TPM_EstablishTransport command.

The anticipation is that AES and 3DES will be available algorithms supported by various TPM's. Symmetric algorithms have options available to them like key size, block size and operating mode. When using an algorithm other than MGF1 the algorithm must specify these options.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MAY support other symmetric algorithms for the confidentiality requirement in TPM_EstablishTransport

18.2 Transport Error Handling

Start of informative comment

With the transport hiding the actual execution of commands and the transport capable of generating errors, rules must be established to allow for the errors and the results of commands to be properly passed to TPM callers.

End of informative comment

- 2695 1. There are 3 cases of errors:
- 2696 2. C1 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the transport package at
2697 the TPM. In this case the wrapped command has not been sent to the command
2698 decoder. Errors occurring during C1 are sent back to the caller as a response to the
2699 TPM_ExecuteTransport command. The error response does not have confidentiality.
- 2700 3. C2 is the case where an error occurs during the processing of the wrapped command.
2701 This results in an error response from the command. The session returns the error
2702 response according to the attributes of the session.
- 2703 4. C3 is the case where an error occurs after the wrapped command has completed
2704 processing and the TPM is preparing the response to the TPM_ExecuteTransport
2705 command. In this case where the TPM does have an internal error the TPM has no
2706 choice but to return the error as in C1. This however hides the results of the wrapped
2707 command. If the wrapped command completed successfully then there are session
2708 nonces that are being returned to the caller that are lost. The loss of these nonces
2709 causes the caller to be unsure of the state of the TPM and requires the reestablishment
2710 of sessions and keys.

2711 18.3 Exclusive Transport Sessions

2712 **Start of informative comment**

2713 The caller may establish an exclusive session with the TPM. When an exclusive session is
2714 running execution of any command, other than executeTransport or
2715 releaseTransportSigned, causes the invalidation of the exclusive transport session. The
2716 design for the exclusive session is to provide an assurance that no other command executed
2717 on the TPM, it is not a lock to prevent other operations from occurring. Therefore, the caller
2718 is responsible to ensure no interruption of the sequence of commands using the TPM.

2719 **One exclusive session**

2720 The TPM only supports one exclusive session at a time. There is no nesting or other
2721 commands possible. The TPM maintains an internal flag that indicates the existence of an
2722 exclusive session. Any operation other than TPM_ExecuteTransport or
2723 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned causes the invalidation of the exclusive session handle.
2724 Invalidation means that the handle is no longer valid and all subsequent attempts to use
2725 the handle return an error.

2726 **TSS responsibilities**

2727 It is the responsibility of the TSS (or other controlling software) to ensure that only
2728 commands using the session reach the TPM. As the purpose of the session is to show that
2729 nothing else occurred on the TPM during the session, the TSS should control access to the
2730 TPM and prevent any other uses of the TPM. The TSS design must take into account the
2731 possibility of exclusive session handle invalidation.

2732 **Sleep states**

2733 Exclusive sessions as defined here do not work across TPM_SaveState and
2734 TPM_Startup(ST_State) invocations. To have this sequence work properly there would need
2735 to be exceptions to the only TPM_ExecuteTransport and TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned are
2736 available in an exclusive session. The requirement for these exceptions would come from
2737 the attempt of the TSS to understand the current state of the TPM. Commands like

2738 TPM_GetCapability and others would have to execute to inform the TSS as to the internal
2739 state of the TPM. For this reason, there are no exceptions to the rule and the exclusive
2740 session does not remain active across a TPM_SaveState command.

2741 **End of informative comment**

- 2742 1. The TPM MUST support only one exclusive transport session
- 2743 2. The TPM MUST invalidate the exclusive transport session upon the receipt of any
2744 command other than TPM_ExecuteTransport or TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned
- 2745 a. Invalidation includes the release of any resources assigned to the session

2746 **18.4 Transport Audit Handling**

2747 **Start of informative comment**

2748 Auditing of TPM_ExecuteTransport occurs as any other command that may require
2749 auditing. There are two entries in the log, one for input one for output. The execution of the
2750 wrapped command can create an anomaly in the log.

2751 Assume that both TPM_ExecuteTransport and the wrapped commands require auditing.
2752 The audit flow would look like the following:

- 2753 TPM_ExecuteTransport input parameters
- 2754 wrapped command input parameters
- 2755 wrapped command output parameters
- 2756 TPM_ExecuteTransport output parameters

2757 **End of informative comment**

- 2758 1. Audit failures are reported using the AUTHFAIL error commands and reflect the success
2759 or failure of the wrapped command.

2760 **18.4.1 Auditing of wrapped commands**

2761 **Start of informative comment**

2762 Auditing provides information to allow an auditor to recreate the operations performed.
2763 Confidentiality on the transport channel is to hide what operations occur. These two
2764 features are in conflict. According to the TPM design philosophy, the TPM Owner takes
2765 precedence.

2766 For a command sent on a transport session, with the session using confidentiality and the
2767 command requiring auditing, the TPM will execute the command however the input and
2768 output parameters for the command are set to NULL.

2769 **End of informative comment**

- 2770 1. When the wrapped command is a command that requires auditing and the transport
2771 session is providing confidentiality, the TPM MUST perform the audit, however the input
2772 and output parameters of the audited command MUST be set to NULL when computing
2773 the audit digest.

2774

19. Audit Commands

2775

Start of informative comment

2776

To allow the TPM Owner the ability to determine that certain operations on the TPM have been executed auditing of commands is possible. The audit value is a digest held internally to the TPM and externally as a log of all audited commands. With the log held externally to the TPM, the internal digest must allow the log auditor to determine the presence of attacks against the log. The evidence of tampering may not provide evidence of the type of attack mounted against the log.

2782

The TPM cannot enforce any protections on the external log. It is the responsibility of the external log owner to properly maintain and protect the log.

2783

2784

The TPM provides mechanisms for the external log maintainer to resynchronize the internal digest and external logs.

2785

2786

The Owner has the ability to set which functions generate an audit event and to change which functions generate the event at any time.

2787

2788

The status of the audit generation is not sensitive information and so the command to determine the status of the audit generation is not an owner authorized command.

2789

2790

It is important to note the difference between auditing and the logging of transport sessions. The audit log provides information on the execution of specific commands. There will be a very limited number of audited commands, most likely those commands that provide identities and control of the TPM. Commands such as unseal would not be audited, they would use the logging functions of a transport session.

2791

2792

2793

2794

2795

The auditing of an ordinal happens in a two-step process. The first step involves auditing the receipt of the command the input parameters; the second step involves auditing the response to the command and the output parameters. This two-step process is in place to lower the amount of memory necessary to keep track of the audit while executing the command. This two-step process makes no memory requirements on a TPM to save any audit information while a command is executing.

2796

2797

2798

2799

2800

2801

There is a requirement to enable verification of the external audit log both during a power session and across power sessions and to enable detection of partial or inconsistent audit logs throughout the lifetime of a TPM.

2802

2803

2804

A TPM will hold an internal record consisting of a non-volatile counter (that increments once per session, when the first audit event of that session occurs) and a digest (that holds the digest of the current session). Most probably, the audit digest will be volatile. Note, however, that nothing in this specification prevents the use of a non-volatile audit digest. This arrangement of counter and digest is advantageous because it is easier to build a high endurance non-volatile counter than a high endurance non-volatile digest. This arrangement is insufficient, however, because the truncation of an audit log of any session is possible without trace. It is therefore necessary to perform an explicit close on the audit session. If there is no record of a close-audit event in an audit session, anything could have happened after the last audit event in the audit log. The essence of a typical TPM audit recording mechanism is therefore:

2805

2806

2807

2808

2809

2810

2811

2812

2813

2814

2815

The TPM contains a volatile digest used like a PCR, where the “integrity metrics” are digests of command parameters in the current audit session.

2816

2817 An audit session opens when the volatile “PCR” digest is “extended” from its NULL state.
2818 This occurs whenever an audited command is executed AND no audit session currently
2819 exists, and in no other circumstances. When an audit session opens, a non-volatile counter
2820 is automatically incremented.

2821 An audit session closes when a TPM receives TPM_GetAuditEventSigned with a CloseAudit
2822 parameter asserted. An audit session must be considered closed if the value in the volatile
2823 digest is invalid (for whatever reason).

2824 TPM_GetCapability should report the effect of TPM_Startup on the volatile digest. (TPMs
2825 may initialize the volatile digest on the first audit command after TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR),
2826 or on the first audit command after any version of TPM_Startup, or may be independent of
2827 TPM_Startup.)

2828 When the TPM signs its audit digest, it signs the concatenation of the non-volatile counter
2829 and the volatile digest, and exports the value of the non-volatile counter, plus the value of
2830 the volatile digest, plus the value of the signature.

2831 Note that if a TPM_SaveState is an audited command, TPM_SaveState should be issued
2832 before TPM_GetAuditEventSigned with CloseAudit asserted. This is safe because
2833 TPM_GetAuditEventSigned does not alter any parameter that is preserved by
2834 TPM_SaveState.

2835 The system designer needs to ensure that the selected TPM can handle the specific
2836 environment and avoid burnout of the audit monotonic counter.

2837 **End of informative comment**

2838 1. Audit functionality is optional

2839 a. If the platform specific specification requires auditing the specification SHALL
2840 indicate how the PTM implements audit

2841 2. The TPM MUST maintain an audit monotonic count that is only available for audit
2842 purposes.

2843 a. The increment of this audit counter is under the sole control of the TPM and is not
2844 usable for other count purposes.

2845 b. This monotonic count MUST BE incremented by one whenever the audit digest is
2846 “extended” from a NULL state.

2847 3. The TPM MUST maintain an audit digest.

2848 a. This digest MUST be set to NULL upon the execution of TPM_GetAuditEventSigned
2849 with a TRUE value of closeAudit provided that the signing key is an identity key.

2850 b. This digest MAY be set to NULL on TPM_Startup[ST_CLEAR] or
2851 TPM_Startup[ST_STATE].

2852 c. When an audited command is executed, this register MUST be extended with the
2853 digest of that command.

2854 4. Each command ordinal has an indicator in non-volatile TPM memory that indicates if
2855 execution of the command will generate an audit event. The setting of ordinal indicator
2856 MUST be under control of the TPM Owner.

2857 5. Updating of auditDigest MAY cease when TPM_VOLATILE_FLAGS -> deactivated is
2858 TRUE. This is because a deactivated TPM performs no useful service until the
2859 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR), at which point TPM_VOLATILE_FLAGS -> deactivated is
2860 reinitialized.

2861 19.1 Audit Monotonic Counter

2862 Start of informative comment

2863 The audit monotonic counter (AMC) performs the task of sequencing audit logs across audit
2864 sessions. The AMC must have no other uses other than the audit log.

2865 The TPM and platform should be matched such that the expected AMC endurance matches
2866 the expected platform audit sessions and sleep cycles.

2867 Given the size of the AMC it is not anticipated that the AMC would roll over. If the AMC
2868 were to roll over, and the storage of the AMC still allowed updates, the AMC could cycle and
2869 start at 0 again.

2870 End of informative comment

- 2871 1. The AMC is a TPM_COUNTER_VALUE.
- 2872 2. The AMC MUST last for 7 years or at least 1,000,000 audit sessions whichever occurs
2873 first. After this amount of usage, there is no guarantee that the TPM will continue to
2874 properly increment the monotonic counter.

2875 19.2 Audit Generation

2876 Start of informative comment

2877 The TPM generates an audit event in response to the TPM executing a function that has the
2878 audit flag set to TRUE for that function.

2879 The TPM maintains an extended value for all audited operations.

2880 Input audit generation occurs before the listed actions and output audit generation occurs
2881 after the listed actions.

2882 End of informative comment

2883 Description

2884 The TPM extends the audit digest whenever the ordinalAuditStatus is TRUE for the ordinal
2885 about to be executed.

2886 Actions

2887 The TPM will execute the ordinal and perform auditing in the following manner

- 2888 1. Map V1 to TPM_VOLATILE_DATA
- 2889 2. Map P1 to TPM_PERSISTENT_DATA
- 2890 3. If V1 -> auditDigest is NULL
 - 2891 a. Increment P1 -> auditMonotonicCounter by 1
- 2892 4. Create A1 a TPM_AUDIT_EVENT_IN structure

- 2893 a. Set A1 -> inputParms to the input parameters from the command
- 2894 i. Digest value according to the HMAC digest rules of the "above the line"
- 2895 parameters (i.e. the first HMAC digest calculation). When there are no HMAC
- 2896 rules, the input digest includes all parameters including and after the ordinal.
- 2897 b. Set V1 -> auditDigest to SHA-1 (V1 -> auditDigest || A1)
- 2898 5. Execute command
- 2899 a. Execution implies the performance of the listed actions for the ordinal.
- 2900 6. Create A2 a TPM_AUDIT_EVENT_OUT structure
- 2901 a. Set A2 -> outputParms to the output parameters from the command
- 2902 i. Digest value according to the HMAC digest rules of the "above the line"
- 2903 parameters (i.e. the first HMAC digest calculation). When there are no HMAC
- 2904 rules, the output digest includes the return code, the ordinal, and all parameters
- 2905 after the return code.
- 2906 b. Set V1 -> auditDigest to SHA-1 (V1 -> auditDigest || A2)

2907 **19.3 Effect of audit failing after successful completion of a command**

2908 **Start of informative comment**

2909 An operation could complete successfully and then when the TPM attempts to audit the
2910 command the audit process could have an internal error that forces the TPM to return an
2911 error.

2912 The TPM is unable to return the results of the command that ran and this includes success
2913 or failure. To indicate to the caller the TPM will use one of two error codes
2914 TPM_AUDITFAIL_SUCCESSFUL and TPM_AUDITFAIL_UNSUCCESSFUL. These two error
2915 codes indicate if the command succeeded or failed. The purpose of these error codes is to
2916 indicate to the caller what occurred with the command execution.

2917 This is new functionality that changes the 1.1 TPM functionality when this condition
2918 occurs.

2919 **End of informative comment**

- 2920 1. When after successful completion of an operation, and in performing the audit process,
2921 the TPM has an internal failure (unable to write, SHA-1 failure etc.) the TPM MUST set
2922 the internal TPM state such that the TPM returns the TPM_FAILEDSELFTEST error.
- 2923 2. If the command is returning a return code that indicates successful execution of the
2924 command the TPM SHALL change the return code to TPM_AUDITFAIL_SUCCESSFUL.
2925 For all other error codes the TPM MUST return TPM_AUDITFAIL_UNSUCCESSFUL.
- 2926 3. If the TPM is permanently nonrecoverable after an audit failure, then the TPM MUST
2927 always return TPM_FAILEDSELFTEST for every command other than
2928 TPM_GetTestResult. This state must persist regardless of power cycling, the execution of
2929 TPM_Init or any other actions.

20. Design Section on Time Stamping

Start of informative comment

The TPM provides a service to apply a time stamp to various blobs. The time stamp provided by the TPM is not an actual universal time clock (UTC) value but is the number of timer ticks the TPM has counted. It is the responsibility of the caller to associate the ticks to an actual UTC time.

The TPM counts ticks from the start of a timing session. Timing sessions are platform dependent events that may or may not coincide with TPM_Init and TPM_Startup sessions. The reason for this difference is the availability of power to the TPM. In a PC desktop, for instance power could be continually available to the TPM by using power from the wall socket. For a PC mobile platform, power may not be available when only using the internal battery. It is a platform designer's decision as to when and how they supply power to the TPM to maintain the timing ticks.

The TPM can provide a time stamping service. The TPM does not maintain an internal secure source of time rather the TPM maintains a count of the number of ticks that have occurred since the start of a timing session.

On a PC, the TPM may use the timing source of the LPC bus or it may have a separate clock circuit. The anticipation is that availability of the TPM timing ticks and the tick resolution is an area of differentiation available to TPM manufactures and platform providers.

End of informative comment

1. This specification makes no requirement on the mechanism required to implement the tick counter in the TPM.
2. This specification makes no requirement on the ability for the TPM to maintain the ability to increment the tick counter across power cycles or in different power modes on a platform.

20.1 Tick Components

Start of informative comment

The TPM maintains for each tick session the following values:

Tick Count Value (TCV) – The count of ticks for the session.

Tick Increment Rate (TIR) – The rate at which the TCV is incremented. There is a set relationship between TIR and seconds, the relationship is set during manufacturing of the TPM and platform. This is the TPM_CURRENT_TICKS -> tickRate parameter.

Tick Session Nonce (TSN) – The session nonce is set at the start of each tick session.

End of informative comment

1. The TCV MUST be set to 0 at the start of each tick session. The TPM MUST start a new tick session if the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR.
2. The TSN MUST be set to the next value from the TPM RNG at the start of each new tick session. When the TPM loses the ability to increment the TCV according to the TIR the TSN MUST be set to NULLS.

- 2969 3. If the TPM discovers tampering with the tick count (through timing changes etc) the TPM
2970 MUST treat this as an attack and shut down further TPM processing as if a self-test had
2971 failed.

2972 **20.2 Basic Tick Stamp**

2973 **Start of informative comment**

2974 The TPM does not provide a secure time source, nor does it provide a signature over some
2975 time value. The TPM does provide a signature over some current tick counter. The signature
2976 covers a hash of the blob to stamp, the current counter value, the tick session nonce and
2977 some fixed text.

2978 The Tick Stamp Result (TSR) is the result of the tick stamp operation that associates the
2979 TCV, TSN and the blob. There is no association with the TCV or TSR with any UTC value at
2980 this point.

2981 **End of informative comment**

2982 **20.3 Associating a TCV with UTC**

2983 **Start of informative comment**

2984 An outside observer would like to associate a TCV with a relevant time value. The following
2985 shows how to accomplish this task. This protocol is not required but shows how to
2986 accomplish the job.

2987 EntityA wants to have BlobA time stamped. EntityA performs TPM_TickStamp on BlobA.
2988 This creates TSRB (TickStampResult for Blob). TSRB records TSRBTCV, the current value of
2989 the TCV, and associates TSRBTCV with the TSN.

2990 Now EntityA needs to associate a TCV with a real time value. EntityA creates blob TS which
2991 contains some known text like "Tick Stamp". EntityA performs TPM_TickStamp on blob TS
2992 creating TSR1. This records TSR1TCV, the current value of the TCV, and associates
2993 TSR1TCV with the TSN.

2994 EntityA sends TSR1 to a Time Authority (TA). TA creates TA1 which associates TSR1 with
2995 UTC1.

2996 EntityA now performs TPM_TickStamp on TA1. This creates TSR2. TSR2 records TSR2TCV,
2997 the current values of the TCV, and associates TSR2TCV with the TSN.

2998 **Analyzing the associations**

2999 EntityA has three TSR's; TSRB the TSR of the blob that we wanted to time stamp, TSR1 the
3000 TSR associated with the TS blob and TSR2 the TSR associated with the information from
3001 the TA. EntityA wants to show an association between the various TSR such that there is a
3002 connection between the UTC and BlobA.

3003 From TSR1 EntityA knows that TSR1TCV is less than the UTC. This is true since the TA is
3004 signing TSR1 and the creation of TSR1 has to occur before the signature of TSR1. Stated
3005 mathematically:

$$3006 \text{TSR1TCV} < \text{UTC1}$$

3007 From TSR2 EntityA knows that TSR2TCV is greater than the UTC. This is true since the
3008 TPM is signing TA1 which must be created before it was signed. Stated mathematically:

3009 $TSR2TCV > UTC1$

3010 EntityA now knows $TSR1TCV$ and $TSR2TCV$ bound $UTC1$. Stated mathematically:

3011 $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

3012 This association holds true if the TSN for $TSR1$ matches the TSN for $TSR2$. If some event
3013 occurs that causes the TPM to create a new TSN and restart the TCV then EntityA must
3014 start the process all over again.

3015 EntityA does not know when $UTC1$ occurred in the interval between $TSR1TCV$ and
3016 $TSR2TCV$. In fact, the value $TSR2TCV$ minus $TSR1TCV$ ($TSRDELTA$) is the amount of
3017 uncertainty to which a TCV value should be associated with $UTC1$. Stated mathematically:

3018 $TSRDELTA = TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV$ iff $TSR1TSN = TSR2TSN$

3019 EntityA can obtain $k1$ the relationship between ticks and seconds using the
3020 `GetCapabilities` command. EntityA also obtains $k2$ the possible errors per tick. EntityA now
3021 calculate $DeltaTime$ which is the conversion of ticks to seconds and the $TSRDELTA$. State
3022 mathematically:

3023 $DeltaTime = (k1 * TSRDELTA) + (k2 * TSRDELTA)$

3024

3025 To make the association between $DeltaTime$, UTC and $TSRB$ note the following:

3026 $DeltaTime = (k1 * TSRDelta) + Drift = TimeChange + Drift$

3027 Where $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) < k2 * TSRDelta$

3028 (1) $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR2TCV$

3029 True since you cannot sign something before it exists

3030 (2) $TSR1TCV < UTC1 < TSR1TCV + TSR2TCV - TSR1TCV \leq TSR1TCV + DeltaTime (=$
3031 $TSR1TCV + TimeChange + Drift)$

3032 True because $TSR1$ and $TSR2$ are in the same tick session proved by the same TSN.
3033 (Note $TimeChange$ is positive!)

3034 (3) $0 < UTC1 - TSR1TCV < DeltaTime$

3035 (Subtract $TSR1TCV$ from all sides)

3036 (4) $0 > TSR1TCV - UTC1 > -DeltaTime = -TimeChange - Drift$

3037 (Multiply through by -1)

3038 (5) $TimeChange/2 > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] > -TimeChange/2 - Drift$

3039 (add $TimeChange/2$ to all sides)

3040 (6) $TimeChange/2 + ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift) > [TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)]$
3041 $> -TimeChange/2 - ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

3042 Making the large side of an equality bigger, and potentially making the small side
3043 smaller.

3044 (7) $ABSOLUTEVALUE[TSR1TCV - (UTC1 - TimeChange/2)] < TimeChange/2 +$
3045 $ABSOLUTEVALUE(Drift)$

(Definition of Absolute Value, and TimeChange is positive)

From which we see that $TSR1TCV$ is approximately $UTC1 - TimeChange/2$ with a symmetric possible error of $TimeChange/2 + AbsoluteValue(Drift)$

We can calculate this error as being less than $k1 * TSRDelta/2 + k2 * TSRDelta$.

EntityA now has the ability to associate $UTC1$ with $TSBTSV$ and by allow others to know that BlobA was signed at a certain time. First $TSBTSN$ must equal $TSR1TSN$. This relationship allows EntityA to assert that $TSRB$ occurs during the same session as $TSR1$ and $TSR2$.

EntityA calculates $HashTimeDelta$ which is the difference between $TSR1TCV$ and $TSRBTCV$ and the conversion of ticks to seconds. $HashTimeDelta$ includes the same $k1$ and $k2$ as calculated above. Stated mathematically:

$$E = k2(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV)$$

$$HashTimeDelta = k1(TSR1TCV - TSRBTCV) + E$$

Now the following relationships hold:

$$(1) UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV - (TSRBTCV - TSR1TCV) < UTC1$$

$$(2) UTC1 - DeltaTime < TSRBTCV + HashTimeDelta + E < UTC1$$

$$(3) UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime - E < TSRBTCV < UTC1 - HashTimeDelta + E$$

$$(4) TSRBTCV = (UTC1 - HashTimeDelta - DeltaTime/2) + (E + DeltaTime/2)$$

This has the correct properties

As $DeltaTime$ grows so does the error bar (or the uncertainty of the time association)

As the difference between the time of the measurement and the time of the time stamp grows, so does the E as a function of E is $HashTimeDelta$

End of informative comment

20.4 Additional Comments and Questions

Start of informative comment

Time Difference

If two things are time stamped, say at $TCVs$ and $TCVe$ (for TCV at start, TCV at end) then any entity can calculate the time difference between the two events and will get:

$$TimeDiff = k1 * |TCVe - TCVs| + k2 * |TCVe - TCVs|$$

This $TimeDiff$ does not indicate what time the two events occurred at it merely gives the time between the events. This time difference doesn't require a Time Authority.

Why is TSN (tick session nonce) required?

Without it, there is no way to associate a Time Authority stamp with any TSV, as the TSV resets at the start of every tick session. The TSN proves that the concatenation of TSV and TSN is unique.

3083 How does the protocol prevent replay attacks?

3084 The TPM signs the TSR sent to the TA. This TSR contains the unique combination of TSV
3085 and TSN. Since the TSN is unique to a tick session and the TSV continues to increment
3086 any attempt to recreate the same TSR will fail. If the TPM is reset such that the TSV is at
3087 the same value, the TSN will be a new value. If the TPM is not reset then the TSV continues
3088 to increment and will not repeat.

3089 How does EntityA know that the TSR1 that the TA signs is recent?

3090 It doesn't. EntityA checks however to ensure that the TSN is the same in all TSR. This
3091 ensures that the values are all related. If TSR1 is an old value then the HashTimeDelta will
3092 be a large value and the uncertainty of the relation of the signing to the UTC will be large.

3093 Why does associating a UTC time with a TSV take two steps?

3094 This is because it takes some time between when a request goes to a time authority and
3095 when the response comes. The protocol measures this time and uses it to create the time
3096 deltas. The relationship of TSV to UTC is somewhere between the request and response.

3097 Affect of power on the tick counter

3098 As the TPM is not required to maintain an internal clock and battery, how the platform
3099 provides power to the TPM affects the ability to maintain the tick counter. The original
3100 mechanism had the TPM maintaining an indication of how the platform provided the power.
3101 Previous performance does not predict what might occur in the future, as the platform may
3102 be unable to continue to provide the power (dead battery, pulled plug from wall etc). With
3103 the knowledge that the TPM cannot accurately report the future, the specification deleted
3104 tick type from the TPM.

3105 The information relative to what the platform is doing to provide power to the TPM is now a
3106 responsibility of the TSS. The TSS should first determine how the platform was built, using
3107 the platform credential. The TSS should also attempt to determine the actual performance
3108 of the TPM in regards to maintaining the tick count. The TSS can help in this determination
3109 by keeping track of the tick nonce. The tick nonce changes each time the tick count is lost.
3110 By comparing the tick nonce across system events the TSS can obtain a heuristic that
3111 represents how the platform provides power to the TPM.

3112 The TSS must define a standard set of values as to when the tick nonce continues to
3113 increment across system events.

3114 The following are some PC implementations that give the flavor of what is possible regarding
3115 the clock on a specific platform.

3116 TICK_INC - No TPM power battery. Clock comes from PCI clock, may stop from time to time
3117 due to clock stopping protocols such as CLKRUN.

3118 TICK_POWER - No TPM power battery. Clock source comes from PCI clock, always runs
3119 except in S3+.

3120 TICK_STSTATE - External power (might be battery) consumed by TPM during S3 only. Clock
3121 source comes either from a system clock that runs during S3 or from crystal/internal TPM
3122 source.

3123 TICK_STCLEAR - Standby power used to drive counter. In desktop, may be related to when
3124 system is plugged into wall. Clock source comes either from a system clock that runs when
3125 standby power is available or from crystal/internal TPM source.

3126 TICK_ALWAYS - TPM power battery. Clock source comes either from a battery powered
3127 system clock that crystal/internal TPM source.
3128 **End of informative comment**

21. Context Management

Start of informative comment

The TPM is a device that contains limited resources. Caching of the resources may occur without knowledge or assistance from the application that loaded the resource. In version 1.1 there were two types of resources that had need of this support keys and authorization sessions. Each type had a separate load and restore operation. In version 1.2 there is the addition of transport sessions. To handle these situations generically 1.2 is defining a single context manager that all types of resources may use.

The concept is simple, a resource manager requests that wrapping of a resource in a manner that securely protects the resource and only allows the restoring of the resource on the same TPM and during the same operational cycle.

Consider a key successfully loaded on the TPM. The parent keys that loaded the key may have required a different set of PCR registers than are currently set on the TPM. For example, the end result is to have key5 loaded. Key3 is protected by key2, which is protected by key1, which is protected by the SRK. Key1 requires PCR1 to be in a certain state, key2 requires PCR2 to load and key3 requires PCR3. Now at some point in time after key1 loaded key2, PCR1 was extended with additional information. If key3 is evicted then there is no way to reload key3 until the platform is rebooted. To avoid this type of problem the TPM can execute context management routines. The context management routines save key3 in its current state and allow the TPM to restore the state without having to use the parent keys (key1 and key2).

There are numerous issues with performing context management on sessions. These issues revolve around the use of the nonces in the session. If an attacker can successfully store, attack, fail and then reload the session the attacker can repeat the attack many times.

The key that the TPM uses to encrypt blobs may be a volatile or non-volatile key. One mechanism would be for the TPM to generate a new key on each TPM_Startup command. Another would be for the TPM to generate the key and store it persistently in the TPM_PERSISTENT_DATA area.

The symmetric key should be relatively the same strength as a 2048-bit RSA key. 128-bit AES or a full three key triple DES would be appropriate.

End of informative comment

1. Context management is a required function.
2. Execution of the context commands MUST NOT cause the exposure of any TPM shielded location.
3. The TPM MUST NOT allow the context saving of the EK or the SRK.
4. The TPM MAY use either symmetric or asymmetric encryption. For asymmetric encryption the TPM MUST use a 2048 RSA key.
5. A wrapped session blob MUST only be loadable once. A wrapped key blob MAY be reloadable.
6. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent saved contexts other than keys. There is no minimum or maximum number of concurrent saved key contexts.

- 3170 7. All external session blobs (of type TPM_RT_TRANS or TPM_RT_AUTH) can be invalidated
3171 upon specific request (via TPM_FlushXXX using TPM_RT_CONTEXT as resource type),
3172 this does not include session blobs of type TPM_RT_KEY.
- 3173 8. External session blobs are invalidated on TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) or on
3174 TPM_Startup(any) based on the startup effects settings
- 3175 a. Session blobs of type TPM_RT_KEY with the attributes of parentPCRStatus = FALSE
3176 and IsVolatile = FALSE SHOULD not be invalidated on TPM_Startup(any)
- 3177 9. All external session blobs invalidate automatically upon installation of a new owner due to the
3178 setting of a new tpmProof.
- 3179 10. If the TPM enters failure mode ALL session blobs (including keys) MUST be invalidated
- 3180 a. Invalidation includes ensuring that contextNonceKey and contextNonceSession will
3181 change when the TPM recovers from the failure.
- 3182 11. Attempts to restore a wrapped blob after the successful completion of
3183 TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR) MUST fail. The exception is a wrapped key blob which may be
3184 long-term and which MAY restore after a TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR).
- 3185 12. The save and load context commands are the generic equivalent to the context
3186 commands in 1.1. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:
- 3187 a. TPM_AuthSaveContext
- 3188 b. TPM_AuthLoadContext
- 3189 c. TPM_KeySaveContext
- 3190 d. TPM_KeyLoadContext

3191 **22. Eviction**3192 **Start of informative comment**

3193 The TPM has numerous resources held inside of the TPM that may need eviction. The need
3194 for eviction occurs when the number or resources in use by the TPM exceed the available
3195 space. For resources that are hard to reload (i.e. keys tied to PCR values) the outside entity
3196 should first perform a context save before evicting items.

3197 In version 1.1 there were separate commands to evict separate resource types. This new
3198 command set uses the resource types defined for context saving and creates a generic
3199 command that will evict all resource types.

3200 **End of informative comment**

- 3201 1. The TPM MUST NOT flush the EK or SRK using this command.
- 3202 2. Version 1.2 deprecates the following commands:
 - 3203 a. TPM_Terminate_Handle
 - 3204 b. TPM_Evict_Key
 - 3205 c. TPM_Reset

3206 **23. Session pool**

3207 **Start of informative comment**

3208 The TPM supports two types of sessions that use the rolling nonce protocol, authorization
3209 and transport. These sessions require much of the same handling and internal storage by
3210 the TPM. To allow more flexibility the internal storage for these sessions will be defined as
3211 coming from the same pool (or area).

3212 The pool requires that three (3) sessions be available. The entities using the TPM can
3213 determine the usage models of what sessions are active. This allows a TPM to have 3
3214 authorization sessions or 3 transport sessions at one time.

3215 Using all available pool resources for transport sessions is not a very usable model. If all
3216 resources are in use by transport there is no resources available for authorization sessions
3217 and hence no ability to execute any commands requiring authorization. A more realistic
3218 model would be to have two transport sessions and one authorization session. While this is
3219 an unrealistic model for actual execution there will be no requirement that the TPM prevent
3220 this from happening. A model of how it could occur would be when there are two
3221 applications running, both using 2 transport sessions and one authorization session. When
3222 switching between the applications if the requirement was that only 2 transport sessions
3223 could be active the TSS that would provide the context switch would have to ensure that the
3224 transport sessions were context saved first.

3225 Sessions can be virtualized, so while the TPM may only have 3 loaded sessions, there may
3226 be an unlimited number of context saved sessions stored outside the TPM.

3227 **End of informative comment**

- 3228 1. The TPM MUST support a minimum of three (3) concurrent sessions. The sessions MAY
3229 be any mix of authentication and transport sessions.

3230 24. Initialization Operations

3231 **Start of informative comment**

3232 Initialization is the process where the TPM establishes an operating environment from a no
3233 power state. Initialization occurs in many different flavors with PCR, keys, handles, sessions
3234 and context blobs all initialized, reloaded or unloaded according to the rules and platform
3235 environment.

3236 Initialization does not affect the operational characteristics of the TPM (like TPM
3237 Ownership).

3238 Clear is the process of returning the TPM to factory defaults. The clear commands need
3239 protection from unauthorized use and must allow for the possibility of changing Owners.
3240 The clear process requires authorization to execute and locks to prevent unauthorized
3241 operation.

3242 The clear functionality performs the following tasks:

3243 Invalidate SRK. Invalidating the SRK invalidates all protected storage areas below the SRK
3244 in the hierarchy. The areas below are not destroyed they just have no mechanism to be
3245 loaded anymore.

3246 All TPM volatile and non-volatile data is set to default value except the endorsement key
3247 pair. The clear includes the Owner-AuthData, so after performing the clear, the TPM has no
3248 Owner. The PCR values are undefined after a clear operation.

3249 The TPM shall return TPM_NOSRK until an Owner is set. After the execution of the clear
3250 command, the TPM must go through a power cycle to properly set the PCR values.

3251 The Owner has ultimate control of when a clear occurs.

3252 The Owner can perform the TPM_OwnerClear command using the TPM Owner
3253 authorization. If the Owner wishes to disable this clear command and require physical
3254 access to perform the clear, the Owner can issue the TPM_DisableOwnerClear command.

3255 During the TPM startup processing anyone with physical access to the machine can issue
3256 the TPM_ForceClear command. This command performs the clear. The
3257 TPM_DisableForceClear disables the TPM_ForceClear command for the duration of the
3258 power cycle. TSS startup code that does not issue the TPM_DisableForceClear leaves the
3259 TPM vulnerable to a denial of service attack. The assumption is that the TSS startup code
3260 will issue the TPM_DisableForceClear on each power cycle after the TSS determines that it
3261 will not be necessary to issue the TPM_ForceClear command. The purpose of the
3262 TPM_ForceClear command is to recover from the state where the Owner has lost or
3263 forgotten the TPM Ownership token.

3264 The TPM_ForceClear must only be possible when the issuer has physical access to the
3265 platform. The manufacturer of a platform determines the exact definition of physical access.

3266 **End of informative comment**

- 3267 1. The TPM MUST support proper initialization. Initialization MUST properly configure the
3268 TPM to execute in the platform environment.
- 3269 2. Initialization MUST ensure that handles, keys, sessions, context blobs and PCR are
3270 properly initialized, reloaded or invalidated according to the platform environment.

- 3271 3. The description of the platform environment arrives at the TPM in a combination of
3272 TPM_Init and TPM_Startup.

3273 **25. HMAC digest rules**

3274 **Start of informative comment**

3275 The order of calculation of the HMAC is critical to being able to validate the authorization
3276 and parameters of a command. All commands use the same order and format for the
3277 calculation.

3278 A more exact representation of a command would be the following

```
3279 *****  
3280 * TAG | LEN | ORD | HANDLES | DATA | AUTH1 (o) | AUTH2 (o) *  
3281 *****
```

3282 The text area for the HMAC calculation would be the concatenation of the following:

3283 ORD || DATA

3284 **End of informative comment**

3285 The HMAC digest of parameters uses the following order

- 3286 1. Skip tag and length
- 3287 2. Include ordinal. This is the 1S parameter in the HMAC column for each command
- 3288 3. Skip handle(s). This includes key and other session handles
- 3289 4. Include data and other parameters for the command. This starts with the 2S parameter
3290 in the HMAC column for each command.
- 3291 5. Skip all AuthData values.

26. Generic authorization session termination rules

Start of informative comment

These rules are the generic rules that govern all authorization sessions, a specific session type may have additional rules or modifications of the generic rules

End of informative comment

1. A TPM SHALL unilaterally perform the actions of TPM_FlushSpecific for a session upon any of the following events
 - a. “continueUse” flag in the authorization session is FALSE
 - b. Shared secret of the session in use to create the exclusive-or for confidentiality of data. Example is TPM_ChangeAuth terminates the authorization session. TPM_ExecuteTransport does not terminate the session due to protections inherent in transport sessions.
 - c. When the associated entity is invalidated
 - d. When the command returns a fatal error. This is due to error returns not setting a nonceEven. Without a new nonceEven the rolling nonces sequence is broken hence the TPM MUST terminate the session.
 - e. Failure of an authorization check at the start of the command
 - f. Execution of TPM_Startup(ST_CLEAR)
2. The TPM MAY perform the actions of TPM_FlushSpecific for a session upon the following events
 - a. Execution of TPM_Startup(ST_STATE)

3313 27. PCR Grand Unification Theory

3314 **Start of informative comment**

3315 This section discusses the unification of PCR definition and use with locality.

3316 The PCR allow the definition of a platform configuration. With the addition of locality, the
3317 meaning of a configuration is somewhat larger. This section defines how the two combine to
3318 provide the TPM user information relative to the platform configuration.

3319 These are the issues regarding PCR and locality at this time

3320 **Definition of configuration**

3321 A configuration is the combination of PCR, PCR attributes and the locality.

3322 **Passing the creators configuration to the user of data**

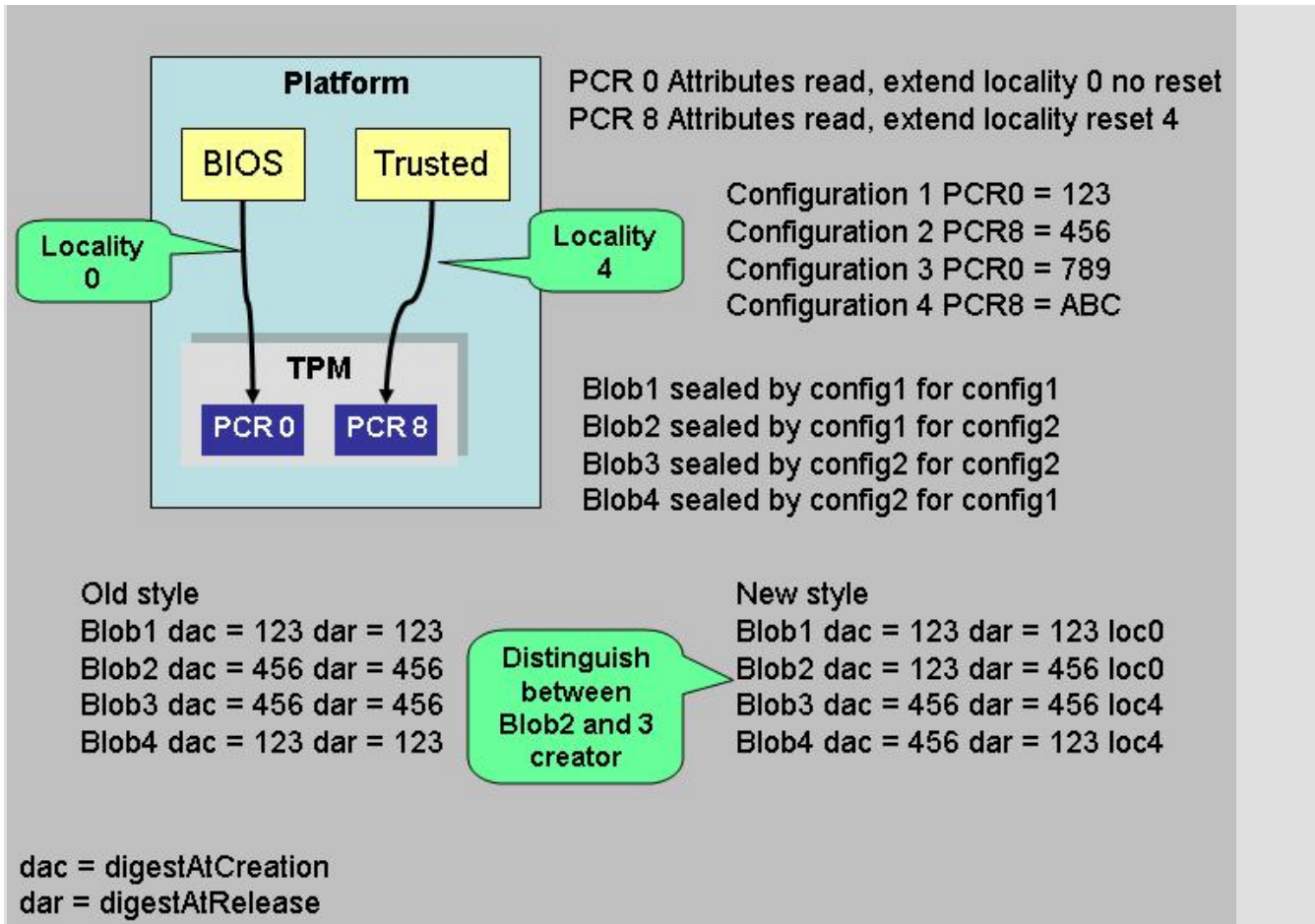
3323 For many reasons, from the creator's viewpoint and the user's viewpoint, the configuration
3324 in use by the creator is important information. This information needs transmitting to the
3325 user with the data and with integrity.

3326 The configuration must include the locality and may not be the same configuration that will
3327 use the data. This allows one configuration to seal a value for future use and the end user
3328 to know the genealogy of where the data comes from.

3329 **Definition of "Use"**

3330 See the definition of TPM_PCR_ATTRIBUTES for the attributes and the normative
3331 statements regarding the use of the attributes. The use of a configuration is when the TPM
3332 needs to ensure that the proper platform configuration is present. The first example is for
3333 Unseal, the TPM must only release the information sealed if the platform configuration
3334 matches the configuration specified by the seal creator. Here the use of locality is implicit in
3335 the PCR attributes, if PCR8 requires locality 2 to be present then the seal creator ensures
3336 that locality 2 is asserted by defining a configuration that uses PCR8.

3337 The creation of a blob that specifies a configuration for use is not a "use" itself. So the SEAL
3338 command does is not a use for specifying the use of a PCR configuration.

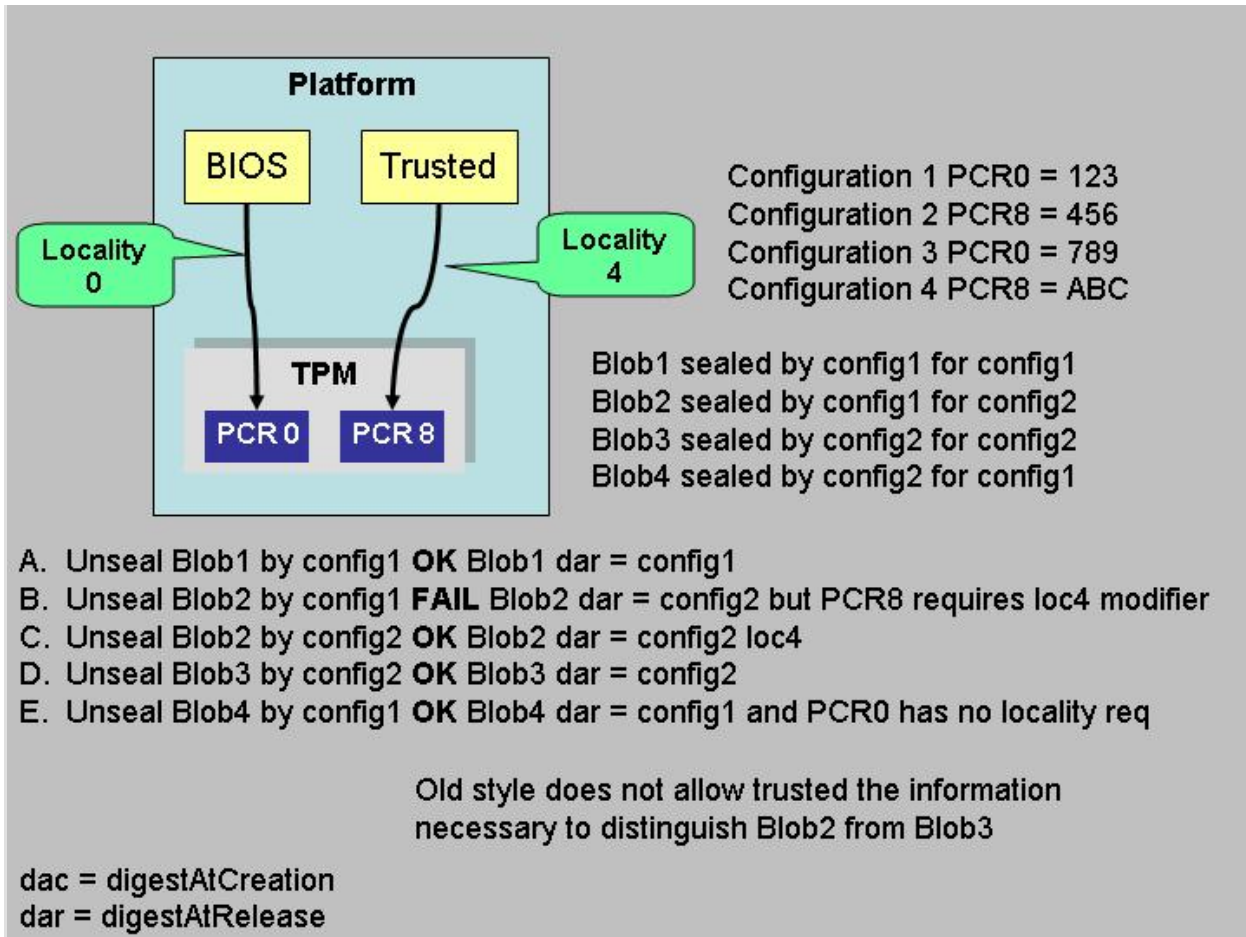


3340

3341

3342

By using the “new style” or TPM_PCR_INFO_LONG structure the user can determine that Blob2 is different that Blob3.



3343

3344 Case B is the only failure and this shows the use of the locality modifier and PCR locality
3345 attribute.

3346 Additional attempts are obvious failures, config3 and config4 are unable to unseal any of
3347 the 4 blobs.

3348 One example is illustrative of the problems of just specifying locality without an
3349 accompanying PCR. Assume Blob5 which specifies a dar of config1 and a locality 4 modifier.
3350 Now either config2 or config4 can unseal Blob5. In fact there is no way to restrict ANY
3351 process that gains access to locality 4 from performing the unseal. As many platforms will
3352 have no restrictions as to which process can load in locality 4 there is no additional benefit
3353 of specifying a locality modifier. If the sealer wants protections, they need to specify a PCR
3354 that requires a locality modifier.

3355 **Defining locality modifiers dynamically**

3356 This feature would enable the platform to specify how and when a locality modifier applies
3357 to a PCR. The current definition of PCR attributes has the values set in TPM manufacturing
3358 and static for all TPM in a specific platform type (like a PC).

3359 Defining dynamic attributes would make the use of a PCR very difficult. The sealer would
3360 have to have some way of ensuring that their wishes were enforced and challengers would
3361 have to pay close attention to the current PCR attributes. For these reasons the setting of
3362 the PCR attributes is defined as a static operation made during the platform specific
3363 specification.

3364 **End of informative comment**

3365 **27.1 Validate Key for use**

3366 **Start of informative comment**

3367 The following shows the order and checks done before the use of a key that has PCR or
3368 locality restrictions.

3369 Note that there is no check for the PCR registers on the DSAP session. This is due to the
3370 fact that DSAP checks for the continued validity of the PCR that are attached to the DSAP
3371 and any change causes the invalidation of the DSAP session.

3372 The checks must validate the locality of the DSAP session as the PCR registers in use could
3373 have locality restrictions.

3374 **End of informative comment**

- 3375 1. If the authorization session is DSAP
 - 3376 a. If the DSAP -> localityAtRelease is not 0x1F (or in other words some localities are not
3377 allowed)
 - 3378 i. Validate that TPM_VOLATILE_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by DSAP ->
3379 pcrInfo -> localityAtRelease, on mismatch return TPM_BAD_LOCALITY
 - 3380 b. If DSAP -> digestAtRelease is not 0
 - 3381 i. Calculate the current digest and compare to digestAtRelease, return
3382 TPM_BAD_PCR on mismatch
 - 3383 c. If the DSAP points to an ordinal delegation
 - 3384 i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the intended ordinal
 - 3385 d. If the DSAP points to a key delegation
 - 3386 i. Check that the DSAP authorizes the use of the key
 - 3387 e. If the key delegated is a CMK key
 - 3388 i. The TPM MUST check the CMK_DELEGATE restrictions
- 3389 2. Set LK to the loaded key that is being used
- 3390 3. If LK -> pcrInfoSize is not 0
 - 3391 a. If LK -> pcrInfo -> releasePCRSelection identifies the use of one or more PCR
 - 3392 i. Calculate H1 a TPM_COMPOSITE_HASH of the PCR selected by LK -> pcrInfo ->
3393 releasePCRSelection
 - 3394 ii. Compare H1 to LK -> pcrInfo -> digestAtRelease on mismatch return
3395 TPM_WRONGPCRVAL
 - 3396 b. If localityAtRelease is NOT 0x1F
 - 3397 i. Validate that TPM_VOLATILE_FLAGS -> localityModifier is matched by LK ->
3398 pcrInfo -> localityAtRelease on mismatch return TPM_BAD_LOCALITY
- 3399 4. Allow use of the key

28. Non Volatile Storage

Start of informative comment

The TPM contains protected non-volatile storage. There are many uses of this type of area; however, a TPM needs to have a defined set of operations that touch any protected area. The idea behind these instructions is to provide an area that the manufacturers and owner can use for storing information in the TPM.

The TCG will define a limited set of information that it sees a need of storing in the TPM. The TPM and platform manufacturer may add additional areas.

The NV storage area has a limited use before it will no longer operate, hence the NV commands are under TPM Owner control.

A defined set of indexes are available when no TPM Owner is present to allow TPM and platform manufacturers the ability to fill in values before a TPM Owner exists.

To locate if an index is available, use TPM_GetCapability to return the index and the size of the are in use by the index.

The area may not be larger than the TPM input buffer. The TPM will report the maximum size available to allocate.

The storage area is an opaque area to the TPM. The TPM, other than providing the storage, does not review the internals of the area.

To SEAL a blob the creator of the area specifies the use of PCR registers to read the value. This is the exact property of SEAL.

To obtain a signed indication of what is in a NV store area the caller would setup a transport session with logging on and then get the signed log. The log shows the parameters so the caller can validate that the TPM holds the value.

There is an attribute, for each index, that defines the expected write scheme for the index. The TPM may handle data storage differently based on the write scheme attribute that defines the expected for the index. Whenever possible the NV memory should be allocated with the write scheme attribute set to update as one block and not as individual bytes.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST support the NV commands. The TPM MUST support the NV area as defined by the TPM_NV_INDEX values.

2. The TPM MAY manage the storage area using any allocation and garbage collection scheme.

3. To remove an area from the NV store the TPM owner would use the TPM_NV_DefineSpace command with a size of 0. Any authorized user can change the value written in the NV store.

4. The TPM MUST treat the NV area as a shielded location.

a. The TPM does not provide any additional protections (like additional encryption) to the NV area.

5. If a write operation is interrupted, then the TPM makes no guarantees about the data stored at the specified index. It MAY be the previous value, MAY be the new value or

3440 MAY be undefined or unpredictable. After the interruption the TPM MAY indicate that
3441 the index contains unpredictable information.

3442 a. The TPM MUST ensure that in case of interruption of a write to an index that all
3443 other indexes are not affected

3444 6. Minimum size of NV area is platform specific. The maximum area is TPM vendor specific.

3445 7. A TPM MUST NOT use the NV area to store any data dependent on data structures
3446 defined in Part II of the TPM specifications, except for the NV Storage Structures implied
3447 by required index values or reserved index values

3448 8. A TPM MUST NOT use the NV area to store any data dependent on data structures
3449 defined in Part II of the TPM specifications, except for the NV Storage Structures implied
3450 by required index values or reserved index values

3451 **28.1 NV storage design principles**

3452 **Start of informative comment**

3453 This section lists the design principles that motivate the NV area in the TPM. There was the
3454 realization that the current design made use of NV storage but not necessarily efficiently.
3455 The DIR, BIT and other commands placed demands on the TPM designer and required
3456 areas that while allowing for flexible use reserved space most likely never used (like DIR for
3457 locality 1).

3458 The following are the design principles that drive the function definitions.

3459 1. Provide efficient use of NV area on the TPM. NV storage is a very limited resource and
3460 data stored in the NV area should be as small as possible.

3461 2. The TPM does not control, edit, validate or manipulate in any manner the information in
3462 the NV store. The TPM is merely a storage device. The TPM does enforce the access rules as
3463 set by the TPM Owner.

3464 3. Allocation of the NV area for a specific use must be under control of the TPM Owner.

3465 4. The TPM Owner, when defining the area to use, will set the access and use policy for the
3466 area. The TPM Owner can set AuthData values, delegations, PCR values and other controls
3467 on the access allowed to the area.

3468 5. There must be a capability to allow TPM and platform manufacturers to use this area
3469 without a TPM Owner being present. This allows the manufacturer to place information into
3470 the TPM without an onerous manufacturing flow. Information in this category would
3471 include EK credential and platform credential.

3472 6. The management and use of the NV area should not require a large number of ordinals.

3473 7. The management and use of the NV area should not introduce new operating strategies
3474 into the TPM and should be easy to implement.

3475 **End of informative comment**

3476 **28.1.1 NV Storage use models**

3477 **Start of informative comment**

3478 This informative section describes some of the anticipated use models and the attributes a
3479 user of the storage area would need to set.

3480

3481 **Owner authorized for all access**

3482 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_OWERREAD || PER_OWNERWRITE

3483 WriteValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

3484 ReadValue(TPM Owner Auth, data)

3485

3486 **Set AuthData value**

3487 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_AUTHREAD || PER_AUTHWRITE, auth =
3488 authValue

3489 WriteValue(authValue, data)

3490 ReadValue(authValue, data)

3491

3492 **Write once, only way to change is to delete and redefine**

3493 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_WRITEDEFINE

3494 WriteValue(size = x, data) // successful

3495 WriteValue(size = 0) // locks

3496 WriteValue(size = x) // fails

3497 ...

3498 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // Does not affect lock

3499 WriteValue(size = x, data) // fails

3500

3501 **Write until specific index is locked, lock reset on Startup(ST_Clear)**

3502 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: index = 3, attributes = PER_WRITE_STCLEAR

3503 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: index = 5, attributes = PER_WRITE_STCLEAR

3504 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful

3505 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

3506 WriteValue(index = 3, size = 0) // locks

3507 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // fails

3508 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

3509 ...

3510 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // clears lock

3511 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful

3512 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful

3513
3514 **Write until index 0 is locked, lock reset by Startup(ST_Clear)**
3515 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 5
3516 TPM_NV_DefineSpace: attributes = PER_GLOBALLOCK, index = 3
3517 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
3518 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
3519
3520 WriteValue(index = 0) // sets SV -> bGlobalLock to TRUE
3521 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // fails
3522 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // fails
3523 ...
3524 TPM_Startup(ST_Clear) // clears lock
3525 WriteValue(index = 3, size = x, data) // successful
3526 WriteValue(index = 5, size = x, data) // successful
3527 **End of informative comment**

3528 **28.2 Use of NV storage during manufacturing**

3529 **Start of informative comment**

3530 The TPM needs the ability to write values to the NV store during manufacturing. It is
3531 possible that the values written at this time would require authorization during normal TPM
3532 use. The actual enforcement of these authorizations during manufacturing would cause
3533 numerous problems for the manufacturer.

3534 The TPM will not enforce the NV authorization restrictions until the execution of a
3535 TPM_DefineSpace with the handle of TPM_NV_INDEX_LOCK.

3536 **End of informative comment**

- 3537 1. The TPM MUST NOT enforce the NV authorizations (auth values, PCR etc.) prior to the
3538 execution of TPM_DefineSpace with an index of TPM_NV_INDEX_LOCK
- 3539 a. While the TPM is not enforcing NV authorizations, the TPM SHALL allow the use of
3540 TPM_DefineSpace in any operational state (disabled, deactivated)

3541 29. Delegation Model

3542 Start of informative comment

3543 The TPM Owner is an entity with a single “super user” privilege to control TPM operation.
3544 Thus if any aspect of a TPM requires management, the TPM Owner must perform that task
3545 himself or reveal his privilege information to another entity. This other entity thereby
3546 obtains the privilege to operate all TPM controls, not just those intended by the Owner.
3547 Therefore the Owner often must have greater trust in the other entity than is strictly
3548 necessary to perform an arbitrary task.

3549 This delegation model addresses this issue by allowing delegation of individual TPM Owner
3550 privileges (the right to use individual Owner authorized TPM commands) to individual
3551 entities, which may be trusted processes.

3552 Basic requirements:

3553 **Consumer user does not need to enter or remember a TPM Owner password.** This is an
3554 ease of use and security issue. Not remembering the password may lead to bad security
3555 practices, increased tech support calls and lost data.

3556 **Role based administration and separation of duty.** It should be possible to delegate just
3557 enough Owner privileges to perform some administration task or carry out some duty,
3558 without delegating all Owner privileges.

3559 **TPM should support multiple trusted processes.** When a platform has the ability to load
3560 and execute multiple trusted processes then the TPM should be able to participate in the
3561 protection of secrets and proper management of the processes and their secrets. In fact, the
3562 TPM most likely is the root of storage for these values. The TPM should enable the proper
3563 management, protection and distribution of values held for the various trusted processes
3564 that reside on the same platform.

3565 **Trusted processes may require restrictions.** A fundamental security tenet is the principle
3566 of least privilege, that is, to limit process functionality to only the functions necessary to
3567 accomplish the task. This delegation model provides a building block that allows a system
3568 designer to create single purpose processes and then ensure that the process only has
3569 access to the functions that it requires to complete the task.

3570 **Maintain the current authorization structure and protocols.** There is no desire to
3571 remove the current TPM Owner and the protocols that authorize and manage the TPM
3572 Owner. The capabilities are a delegation of TPM Owner responsibilities. The delegation
3573 allows the TPM Owner to delegate some or all of the actions that a TPM Owner can perform.
3574 The TPM Owner has complete control as to when and if the capability delegation is in use.

3575 **End of informative comment**

3576 29.1 Table Requirements

3577 Start of informative comment

3578 **No ocean front property in table** – We want the table to be virtually unlimited in size.
3579 While we need some storage, we do not want to pick just one number and have that be the
3580 min and max. This drives the need for the ability to save, off the TPM, delegation elements.

3581 **Revoking a delegation, does not affect other** delegations – The TPM Owner may, at any
3582 time, determine that a delegation is no longer appropriate. The TPM Owner needs to be able

3583 to ensure the revocation of all delegations in the same family. The TPM Owner also wants
3584 to ensure that revocation done in one family does not affect any other family of delegations.

3585 **Table seeded by OEM** – The OEM should do the seeding of the table during manufacturing.
3586 This allows the OEM to ship the platform and make it easy for the platform owner to
3587 startup the first time. The definition of manufacturing in this context includes any time
3588 prior to or including the time the user first turns on the platform.

3589 **Table not tied to a TPM owner** – The table is not tied to the existence of a TPM owner. This
3590 facilitates the seeding of the table by the OEM.

3591 **External delegations need authorization and assurance of revocation** – When a
3592 delegation is held external to the TPM, the TPM must ensure authorization of the delegation
3593 when loading the delegation. Upon revocation of a family or other family changes the TPM
3594 must ensure that prior valid delegations are not successfully loaded.

3595 **90% case, no need for external store** – The normal case should be that the platform does
3596 not need to worry about having external delegations. This drives the need for some NV
3597 storage to hold a minimum number of table rows.

3598 **End of informative comment**

3599 **29.2 How this works**

3600 **Start of informative comment**

3601 The existing TPM owner authorization model is that certain TPM commands require the
3602 authorization of the TPM Owner to operate. The authorization value is the TPM Owners
3603 token. Using the token to authorize the command is proof of TPM Ownership. There is only
3604 one token and knowledge of this token allows all operations that require proof of TPM
3605 Ownership.

3606 This extension allows the TPM Owner to create a new AuthData value and to delegate some
3607 of the TPM Ownership rights to the new AuthData value.

3608 The use model of the delegation is to create an authorization session (DSAP) using the
3609 delegated AuthData value instead of the TPM Owner token. This allows delegation to work
3610 without change to any current command.

3611 The intent is to permit delegation of selected Owner privileges to selected entities, be they
3612 local or remote, separate from the current software environment or integrated into the
3613 current software environment. Thus Owner privileges may be delegated to entities on other
3614 platforms, to entities (trusted processes) that are part of the normal software environment
3615 on the Owner's platform, or to a minimalist software environment on the Owner's platform
3616 (created by booting from a CDROM, or special disk partition), for example.

3617 Privileges may be delegated to a particular entity via definition of a particular process on the
3618 Owner's platform (by dictating PCR values), and/or by stipulating a particular AuthData
3619 value. The resultant TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and any AuthData value must be
3620 passed by the Owner to the chosen entity.

3621 Delegation to an external entity (not on the Owner's platform) probably requires an
3622 AuthData value and a NULL PCR selection. (But the AuthData value might be sealed to a
3623 desired set of PCRs in that remote platform.)

3624 Delegation to a trusted process provided by the local OS requires a PCR that indicates the
3625 trusted process. The authorization token should be a fixed value (any well known value),
3626 since the OS has no means to safely store the authorization token without sealing that
3627 token to the PCR that indicates the trusted process. It is suggested that the value
3628 0x111...111 be used.

3629 Delegation to a specially booted entity requires either a PCR or an authorization token, and
3630 preferably both, to recognize both the process and the fact that the Owner wishes that
3631 process to execute.

3632 The central delegation data structure is a set of tables. These tables indicate the command
3633 ordinals delegated by the TPM Owner to a particular defined environment. The tables allow
3634 the distinction of delegations belonging to different environments.

3635 The TPM is capable of storing internally a few table elements to enable the passing of the
3636 delegation information from an entity that has no access to memory or storage of the
3637 defined environment.

3638 The number of delegations that the tables can hold is a dynamic number with the
3639 possibility of adding or deleting entries at any time. As the total number is dynamic, and
3640 possibly large, the TPM provides a mechanism to cache the delegations. The cache of a
3641 delegation must include integrity and confidentiality. The term for the encrypted cached
3642 entity is blob. The blob contains a counter (verificationCount) validated when the TPM loads
3643 the blob.

3644 An Owner uses the counter mechanism to prevent the use of undesirable blobs; they
3645 increment verificationCount inside the TPM and insert the current value of
3646 verificationCount into selected table elements, including temporarily loaded blobs. (This is
3647 the reason why a TPM must still load a blob that has an incorrect verificationCount.) An
3648 Owner can verify the delegation state of his platform (immediately after updating
3649 verificationCount) by keeping copies of the elements that have just been given the current
3650 value of verificationCount, signing those copies, and sending them to a third party.

3651 Verification probably requires interaction with a third party because acceptable table
3652 profiles will change with time and the most important reason for verification is suspicion of
3653 the state of a TOS in a platform. Such suspicion implies that the verification check must be
3654 done by a trusted security monitor (perhaps separate trusted software on another platform
3655 or separate trusted software on CDROM, for example). The signature sent to the third party
3656 must include a freshness value, to prevent replay attacks, and the security monitor must
3657 verify that a response from the third party includes that freshness value. In situations
3658 where the highest confidence is required, the third party could provide the response by an
3659 out-of-band mechanism, such as an automated telephone service with spoken confirmation
3660 of acceptability of platform state and freshness value.

3661 A challenger can verify an entire family using a single transport session with logging, that
3662 increments the verification count, updates the verification count in selected blobs, reads the
3663 tables and obtains a single transport session signature over all of the blobs in a family.

3664 If no Owner is installed, the delegation mechanisms are inoperative and third party
3665 verification of the tables is impossible, but tables can still be administered and corrected.
3666 (See later for more details.)

3667 To perform an operation using the delegation the entity establishes an authorization session
3668 and uses the delegated AuthData value for all HMAC calculations. The TPM validates the
3669 AuthData value, and in the case of defined environments checks the PCR values. If the

3670 validation is successful, the TPM then validates that the delegation allows the intended
3671 operation.

3672 There can be at least two delegation rows stored in non-volatile storage inside a TPM, and
3673 these may be changed using Owner privilege or delegated Owner privilege. Each delegation
3674 table row is a member of a family, and there can be at least eight family rows stored in non-
3675 volatile storage inside a TPM. An entity belonging to one family can be delegated the
3676 privilege to create a new family and edit the rows in its own family, but no other family.

3677 In addition to tying together delegations, the family concept and the family table also
3678 provides the mechanism for validation and revocation of exported delegate table rows, as
3679 well as the mechanism for the platform user to perform validation of all delegations in a
3680 family.

3681 **End of informative comment**

3682 **29.3 Family Table**

3683 **Start of informative comment**

3684 The family table has three main purposes.

3685 1 - To provide for the grouping of rows in the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE; entities identified in
3686 delegate table rows as belonging to the same family can edit information in the other
3687 delegate table rows with the same family ID. This allows a family to manage itself and
3688 provides an easier mechanism during upgrades.

3689 2 - To provide the validation and revocation mechanism for exported
3690 TPM_DELEGATE_ROWS and those stored on the TPM in the delegation table

3691 3 - To provide the ability to perform validation of all delegations in a family

3692 The family table must have eight rows, and may have more. The maximum number of rows
3693 is TPM vendor-defined and is available using the TPM_GetCapability command.

3694 As the family table has a limited number of rows, there is the possibility that this number
3695 could be insufficient. However, the ability to create a virtual amount of rows, like done for
3696 the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE would create the need to have all of the validation and
3697 revocation mechanisms that the family table provides for the delegate table. This could
3698 become a recursive process, so for this version of the specification, the recursion stops at
3699 the family table.

3700 The family table contains four pieces of information: the family ID, the family label, the
3701 family verification count, and the family flags.

3702 The family ID is a 32-bit value that provides a sequence number of the families in use.

3703 The family label is a one-byte field that family table manager software would use to help
3704 identify the information associated with the family. Software must be able to map the
3705 numeric value associated with each family to the ASCII-string family name displayable in
3706 the user interface.

3707 The family verification count is a 32-bit sequence number that identifies the last outside
3708 verification and attestation of the family information.

3709 Initialization of the family table occurs by using the TPM_Delegate_Manage command with
3710 the TPM_FAMILY_CREATE option.

3711 The verificationCount parameter enables a TPM to check that all rows of a family in the
3712 delegate table are approved (by an external verification process), even if rows have been
3713 stored off-TPM.

3714 The family flags allow the use and administration of the family table row, and its associated
3715 delegate table rows.

3716 **Row contents**

3717 Family ID – 32-bits

3718 Row label – One byte

3719 Family verification count – 32-bits

3720 Family enable/disable use/admin flags – 32-bits

3721 **End of informative comment**

3722 **29.4 Delegate Table**

3723 **Start of informative comment**

3724 The delegate table has three main purposes, from the point of view of the TPM. This table
3725 holds:

3726 The list of ordinals allowable for use by the delegate

3727 The identity of a process that can use the ordinal list

3728 The AuthData value to use the ordinal list

3729 The delegate table has a minimum of two (2) rows; the maximum number of rows is TPM
3730 vendor-defined and is available using the TPM_GetCapability command. Each row
3731 represents a delegation and, optionally, an assignment of that delegation to an identified
3732 trusted process.

3733 The non-volatile delegate rows permit an entity to pass delegation rows to a software
3734 environment without regard to shared memory between the entity and the software
3735 environment. The size of the delegate table does not restrict the number of delegations
3736 because TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation can create blobs for use in a DSAP session,
3737 bypassing the delegate table.

3738 The TPM Owner controls the tables that control the delegations, but (recursively) the TPM
3739 Owner can delegate the management of the tables to delegated entities. Entities belonging
3740 to a particular group (family) of delegation processes may edit delegate table entries that
3741 belong to that family.

3742 After creation of a delegation entry there is no restriction on the use of the delegation in a
3743 properly authorized session. The TPM Owner has properly authorized the creation of the
3744 delegation so the use of the delegation occurs whenever the delegate wishes to use it.

3745 The rows of the delegate table held in non-volatile storage are only changeable under TPM
3746 Owner authorization.

3747 The delegate table contains six pieces of information: PCR information, the AuthData value
3748 for the delegated capabilities, the delegation label, the family ID, the verification count, and
3749 a profile of the capabilities that are delegated to the trusted process identified by the PCR
3750 information.

3751

Row Elements

3752

ASCII label – Label that provides information regarding the row. This is not a sensitive item.

3753

Family ID – The family that the delegation belongs to; this is not a sensitive item.

3754

Verification count – Specifies the version, or generation, of this row; version validity information is in the family table. This is not a sensitive value.

3755

3756

Delegated capabilities – The capabilities granted, by the TPM Owner, to the identified process. This is not a sensitive item.

3757

3758

Authorization and Identity

3759

The creator of the delegation sets the AuthData value and the PCR selection. The creator is responsible for the protection and dissemination of the AuthData value. This is a sensitive value.

3760

3761

3762

End of informative comment

3763

1. The TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE MUST have at least two (2) rows; the maximum number of table rows is TPM-vendor defined and MUST be reported in response to a TPM_GetCapabilites command

3764

3765

3766

2. The AuthData value and the PCR selection must be set by the creator of the delegation

3767

29.5 Delegation Administration Control

3768

Start of informative comment

3769

The delegate tables (both family and delegation) present some control problems. The tables must be initialized by the platform OEM, administered and controlled by the TPM Owner, and reset on changes of TPM Ownership. To provide this level of control there are three phases of administration with different functions available in the phases.

3770

3771

3772

3773

The three phases of table administration are; manufacturing (P1), no-owner (P2) and owner present (P3). These three phases allow different types of administration of the delegation tables.

3774

3775

3776

Manufacturing (P1)

3777

A more accurate definition of this phase is open, un-initialized and un-owned. It occurs after TPM manufacturing and as a result of TPM_OwnerClear or TPM_ForceClear.

3778

3779

In P1 TPM_Delegate_Manage can initialize and manage non-volatile family rows in the TPM. TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation can load non-volatile delegation rows in the TPM.

3780

3781

Attacks that attempt to burnout the TPM's NV storage are frustrated by the NV store's own limits on the number of writes when no Owner is installed.

3782

3783

No-Owner (P2)

3784

This phase occurs after the platform has been properly setup. The setup can occur in the platform manufacturing flow, during the first boot of the platform or at any time when the platform owner wants to lock the table settings down. There is no TPM Owner at this time.

3785

3786

3787

TPM_Delegate_Manage locks both the family and delegation rows. This lock can be opened only by the Owner (after the Owner has been installed, obviously) or by the act of removing

3788

3789 the Owner (even if no Owner is installed). Thus locked tables can be unlocked by asserting
3790 Physical Presence and executing TPM_ForceClear, without having to install an Owner.

3791 In P2, the relevant TPM_Delegate_xxx commands all return the error
3792 TPM_DELEGATE_LOCKED. This is not an issue as there is no TPM Owner to delegate
3793 commands, so the inability to change the tables or create delegations does not affect the
3794 use of the TPM.

3795 **Owned (P3)**

3796 In this phase, the TPM has a TPM Owner and the TPM Owner manages the table as the
3797 Owner sees fit. This phase continues until the removal of the TPM Owner.

3798 Moving from P2 to P3 is automatic upon establishment of a TPM Owner. Removal of the
3799 TPM Owner automatically moves back to P1.

3800 The TPM Owner always has the ability to administer any table. The TPM Owner may
3801 delegate the ability to manipulate a single family or all families. Such delegations are
3802 operative only if delegations are enabled.

3803 **End of informative comment**

3804 1. When DelegateAdminLock is TRUE the TPM MUST disallow any changes to the delegate
3805 tables

3806 2. With a TPM Owner installed, the TPM Owner MUST authorize all delegate table changes

3807 **29.5.1 Control in Phase 1**

3808 **Start of informative comment**

3809 The TPM starts life in P1. The TPM has no owner and the tables are empty. It is desirable
3810 for the OEM to initialize the tables to allow delegation to start immediately after the Owner
3811 decides to enable delegation. As the setup may require changes and validation, a simple
3812 mechanism of writing to the area once is not a valid option.

3813 TPM_Delegate_Manage and TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation allow the OEM to fill the
3814 table, read the public parts of the table, perform reboots, reset the table and when finally
3815 satisfied as to the state of the platform, lock the table.

3816 Alternatively, the OEM can leave the tables NULL and turn off table administration leaving
3817 the TPM in an unloaded state waiting for the eventual TPM Owner to fill the tables, as they
3818 need.

3819 Flow to load tables

3820 Default values of DelegateAdminLock are set either during manufacturing or are the result
3821 of TPM_OwnerClear or TPM_ForceClear.

3822 TPM_Delegate_ManageTable verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and that there is no
3823 TPM Owner. The command will therefore load or manipulate the family tables as specified
3824 in the command.

3825 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation verifies that DelegateAdminLock is FALSE and no
3826 TPM_Owner is present. The command loads the delegate information specified in the
3827 command.

3828 **End of informative comment**

3829 29.5.2 Control in Phase 2

3830 Start of informative comment

3831 In phase 2, no changes are possible to the delegate tables. The platform owner must install
3832 a TPM Owner and then manage the tables, or use TPM_ForceClear to revert to phase 1.

3833 End of informative comment

3834 29.5.3 Control in Phase 3

3835 Start of informative comment

3836 The TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE requires commands that manage the table. These commands
3837 include filling the table, turning use of the table on or off, turning administration of the
3838 table on or off, and using the table.

3839 The commands are:

3840 **TPM_Delegate_Manage** – Manages the family table on a row-by-row basis: creates a new
3841 family, enables/disables use of a family table row and delegate table rows that share the
3842 same family ID, enables/disables administration of a family’s rows in both the family table
3843 and the delegate table, and invalidates an existing family.

3844 **TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation** increments the family verification count (if
3845 desired) and delegates the Owner’s privilege to use a set of command ordinals, by creating a
3846 blob. Such blobs can be used as input data for TPM_DSAP or
3847 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation. Incrementing the verification count and creating a
3848 delegation must be an atomic operation. Otherwise no delegations are operative after
3849 incrementing the verification count.

3850 **TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation** loads a delegate blob into a non-volatile delegate
3851 table row, inside the TPM.

3852 **TPM_Delegate_ReadTable** is used to read from the TPM the public contents of the family
3853 and delegate tables that are stored on the TPM.

3854 **TPM_UpdateVerification** sets the verificationCount in an entity (a blob or a delegation row)
3855 to the current family value, in order that the delegations represented by that entity will
3856 continue to be accepted by the TPM.

3857 **TPM_VerifyDelegation** loads a delegate blob into the TPM, and returns success or failure,
3858 depending on whether the blob is currently valid.

3859 **TPM_DSAP** – opens a deferred authorization session, using either an input blob (created by
3860 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation) or a cached blob (loaded by
3861 TPM_Delegate_LoadOwnerDelegation into one of the TPM’s non-volatile delegation rows).

3862 End of informative comment

3863 29.6 Family Verification

3864 Start of informative comment

3865 The platform user may wish to have confirmation that the delegations in use provide a
3866 coherent set of delegations. This process would require some evaluation of the processes
3867 granted delegations. To assist in this confirmation the TPM provides a mechanism to group

3868 all delegations of a family into a signed blob. The signed blob allows the verification agent to
3869 look at the delegations, the processes involved and make an assessment as the validity of
3870 the delegations. The third party then sends back to the platform owner the results of the
3871 assessment.

3872 To perform the creation of the signed blob the platform owner needs the ability to group all
3873 of the delegations of a single family into a transport session. The platform owner also wants
3874 an assurance that no management of the table is possible during the verification.

3875 This verification does not prove to a third party that the platform owner is not cheating.
3876 There is nothing to prevent the platform owner from performing the validation and then
3877 adding an additional delegation to the family.

3878 Here is one example protocol that retrieves the information necessary to validate the rows
3879 belonging to a particular family. Note that the local method of executing the protocol must
3880 prevent a man-in-the-middle attack using the nonce supplied by the user.

3881 The TPM Owner can increment the family verification count or use the current family
3882 verification count. Using the current family verification count carries the risk that
3883 unexamined delegation blobs permit undesirable delegations. Using an incremented
3884 verification count eliminates that risk. The entity gathering the verification data requires
3885 Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants access to transport session
3886 commands, plus other commands depending on whether verificationCount is to be
3887 incremented. This delegation could be a trusted process that can use the delegations
3888 because of its PCR measurements, a remote entity that can use the delegations because the
3889 Owner has sent it a TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and AuthData value, or the host
3890 platform booted from a CDROM that can use the delegations because of its PCR
3891 measurements, and TPM_DELEGATE_OWNER_BLOB and AuthData value submitted by the
3892 Owner, for example.

3893 Verification using the current verificationCount

3894 The gathering entity requires access to a delegation that grants access to at least the
3895 ordinals to perform a transport session, plus TPM_Delegate_ReadTable and
3896 TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation.

3897 The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set. This
3898 ensures notification if other operations occur on the TPM during the validation process. (If
3899 other operations do occur, the validation processes may have been subverted.) All
3900 subsequent commands listed are performed using the transport session.

3901 TPM_Delegate_ReadTable displays all public values (including the permissions and PCR
3902 values) in the TPM.

3903 TPM_Delegate_VerifyDelegation loads each cached blob, with all public values (including the
3904 permissions and PCR values) in plain text.

3905 After verifying all blobs, TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

3906 The gathering entity sends the log of the transport session plus any supporting information
3907 to the validation entity, which evaluates the signed transport session log and informs the
3908 platform owner of the result of the evaluation. This could be an out-of-band process.

3909 Verification using an incremented verificationCount

3910 The gathering entity requires Owner authorization or access to a delegation that grants
3911 access to at least the ordinals to perform a transport session, plus
3912 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation, TPM_Delegate_ReadTable, and UpdateVerification.

3913 The TPM Owner creates a transport session with the “no other activity” attribute set.

3914 To increment the count the TPM Owner (or a delegate) must use
3915 TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation with increment == TRUE. That blob permits creation
3916 of new delegations or approval of existing tables and blobs. That delegation must set the
3917 PCRs of the desired (local) process and the desired AuthData value of the process. As noted
3918 previously, AuthData values should be a fixed value if the gathering entity is a trusted
3919 process that is part of the normal software environment.

3920 If new delegations are to be created, TPM_Delegate_CreateOwnerDelegation must be used
3921 with increment == FALSE.

3922 If existing blobs and delegation rows are to be reapproved,
3923 TPM_Delegate_UpdateVerification must be used to install the new value of verificationCount
3924 into those existing blobs and non-volatile rows. This exposes the blobs’ public information
3925 (including the permissions and PCR values) in plain text to the transport session.

3926 TPM_Delegate_ReadTable then exposes all public values (including the permissions and
3927 PCR values) of tables to the transport session.

3928 Again, after verifying all blobs, TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned signs the list of transactions.

3929 **End of informative comment**

3930 **29.7 Use of commands for different states of TPM**

3931 **Start of informative comment**

3932 Use the ordinal table to determine when the various commands are available for use

3933 **End of informative comment**

3934 **29.8 Delegation Authorization Values**

3935 **Start of informative comment**

3936 This section describes why, when a PCR selection is set, the AuthData value may be a fixed
3937 value, and, when the PCR selection is null, the delegation creator must select an AuthData
3938 value.

3939 A PCR value is an indication of a particular (software) environment in the local platform.
3940 Either that PCR value indicates a trusted process or not. If the trusted process is to execute
3941 automatically, there is no point in allocating a meaningful AuthData value. (The only way
3942 the trusted process could store the AuthData value is to seal it to the process’s PCR values,
3943 but the delegation mechanism is already checking the process’s PCR values.) If execution of
3944 the trusted process is dependent upon the wishes of another entity (such as the Owner), the
3945 AuthData value should be a meaningful (private) value known only to the TPM, the Owner,
3946 and that other entity. Otherwise the AuthData value should be a fixed, well known, value.

3947 If the delegation is to be controlled from a remote platform, these simple delegation
3948 mechanisms provide no means for the platform to verify the PCRs of that remote platform,

3949 and hence access to the delegation must be based solely upon knowledge of the AuthData
3950 value.

3951 **End of informative comment**

3952 **29.8.1 Using the authorization value**

3953 **Start of informative comment**

3954 To use a delegation the TPM will enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any
3955 command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM Owner
3956 authorization.

3957 **PCR Selection defined**

3958 In this case, the delegation has a PCR selection structure defined. Each time the TPM uses
3959 the delegation authorization value instead of the TPM Owner value the TPM would validate
3960 that the current PCR settings match the settings held in the delegation structure. The PCR
3961 selection includes the definition of localities and checks of locality occur with the checking
3962 of the PCR values. The TPM enforces use of the correct authorization value, which may or
3963 may not be a meaningful (private) value.

3964 **PCR selection NULL**

3965 In this case, the delegation has no PCR selection structure defined. The TPM does not
3966 enforce any particular environment before using the authorization value. Mere knowledge of
3967 the value is sufficient.

3968 **End of informative comment**

3969 **29.9 DSAP description**

3970 **Start of informative comment**

3971 The DSAP opens a deferred auth session, using either a TPM_DELEGATE_BLOB as input
3972 parameter or a reference to the TPM_DELEGATE_TABLE_ROW, stored inside the TPM. The
3973 DSAP command creates an ephemeral secret to authenticate a session. The purpose of this
3974 section is to illustrate the delegation of user keys or TPM Owner authorization by creating
3975 and using a DSAP session without regard to a specific command.

3976 A key defined for a certain usage (e.g. TPM_KEY_IDENTITY) can be applied to different
3977 functions within the use model (e.g. TPM_Quote or TPM_CertifyKey). If an entity knows the
3978 AuthData for the key (key.usageAuth) it can perform all the functions, allowed for that use
3979 model of that particular key. This entity is also defined as delegation creation entity, since it
3980 can initiate the delegation process. Assume that a restricted usage entity should only be
3981 allowed to execute a subset or a single functions denoted as TPM_Example, within the
3982 specific use model of a key. (e.g. Allow the usage of a TPM_IDENTITY_KEY only for
3983 Certifying Keys, but no other function). This use model points to the selection of the DSAP
3984 as the authorization protocol to execute the TPM_Example command.

3985 To perform this scenario the delegation creation entity must know the AuthData for the key
3986 (key.usageAut). It then has to initiate the delegation by creating a
3987 TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB via the TPM_Delegate_CreateBlob command. As a next step
3988 the delegation creation entity has to pass the TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB and the
3989 delegation AuthData (TPM_DELEGATE_SENSITIVE.authValue) to the restricted usage

3990 entity. The specification offers the TPM_DelTable_ReadAuth mechanism to perform this
3991 function. Other mechanisms may be used.

3992 The restricted usage entity can now start an TPM_DSAP session by using the
3993 TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB as input.

3994 For the TPM_Example command, the inAuth parameter provides the authorization to
3995 execute the command. The following table shows the commands executed, the parameters
3996 created and the wire formats of all of the information.

3997 <inParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(ordinal, inArgOne,
3998 inArgTwo). <outParamDigest> is the result of the following calculation: SHA1(returnCode,
3999 ordinal, outArgOne). inAuthSetupParams refers to the following parameters, in this order:
4000 authLastNonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession. OutAuthSetupParams refers to the
4001 following parameters, in this order: nonceEven, nonceOdd, continueAuthSession

4002 In addition to the two even nonces generated by the TPM (authLastNonceEven and
4003 nonceEven) that are used for TPM_OIAP, there is a third, labeled nonceEvenOSAP that is
4004 used to generate the shared secret. For every even nonce, there is also an odd nonce
4005 generated by the system.

4006

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Send TPM_DSAP	TPM_DSAP keyHandle nonceOddOSAP entityType entityValue	→	Decrypt sensitiveArea of entityValue If entityValue==TPM_ET_DEL_BLOB verify the integrity of the blob, and if a TPM_DELEGATE_KEY_BLOB is input verify that KeyHandle and entityValue match Create session & authHandle Generate authLastNonceEven Save authLastNonceEven with authHandle Generate nonceEvenOSAP Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue., nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save keyHandle, sharedSecret with authHandle and permissions
Save authHandle, authLastNonceEven Generate sharedSecret = HMAC(sensitiveArea.authValue, nonceEvenOSAP, nonceOddOSAP) Save sharedSecret	authHandle, authLastNonceEven nonceEvenOSAP	←	Returns
Generate nonceOdd & save with authHandle. Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams)			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo authHandle nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Verify authHandle points to a valid session, mismatch returns TPM_AUTHFAIL Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Check if command ordinal of TPM_Example is allowed in permissions. If not return TPM_DISABLED_CMD Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

4007

4008

4009 Suppose now that the TPM user wishes to send another command using the same session
4010 to operate on the same key. For the purposes of this example, we will assume that the same
4011 ordinal is to be used (TPM_Example). To re-use the previous session, the
4012 continueAuthSession output boolean must be TRUE.

4013 The following table shows the command execution, the parameters created and the wire
4014 formats of all of the information.

4015 In this case, authLastNonceEven is the nonceEven value returned by the TPM with the
4016 output parameters from the first execution of TPM_Example.

Caller	On the wire	Dir	TPM
Generate nonceOdd Compute inAuth = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Save nonceOdd with authHandle			
Send TPM_Example	tag paramSize ordinal inArgOne inArgTwo nonceOdd continueAuthSession inAuth	→	Retrieve authLastNonceEven from internal session storage HM = HMAC (sharedSecret, inParamDigest, inAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to inAuth. If they do not compare return with TPM_AUTHFAIL Execute TPM_Example and create returnCode Generate nonceEven to replace authLastNonceEven in session Set resAuth = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams)
Save nonceEven HM = HMAC(sharedSecret, outParamDigest, outAuthSetupParams) Compare HM to resAuth. This verifies returnCode and output parameters.	tag paramSize returnCode outArgOne nonceEven continueAuthSession resAuth	←	Return output parameters If continueAuthSession is FALSE then destroy session

4017

4018 The TPM user could then use the session for further authorization sessions or terminate it
4019 in the ways that have been described above in TPM_OIAP. Note that termination of the
4020 DSAP session causes the TPM to destroy the shared secret.

4021 **End of informative comment**

- 4022 1. The DSAP session MUST enforce any PCR selection on use. The use definition is any
4023 command that uses the delegation authorization value to take the place of the TPM
4024 Owner authorization.

4025 **30. Physical Presence**

4026 **Start of informative comment**

4027 Physical presence is a signal from the platform to the TPM that indicates the operator
4028 manipulated the hardware of the platform. Manipulation would include depressing a
4029 switch, setting a jumper, depressing a key on the keyboard or some other such action.

4030 TCG does not specify an implementation technique. The guideline is the physical presence
4031 technique should make it difficult or impossible for rogue software to assert the physical
4032 presence signal.

4033 A PC-specific physical presence mechanism might be an electrical connection from a switch,
4034 or a program that loads during power on self-test.

4035 **End of informative comment**

4036 The TPM MUST support a signal from the platform for the assertion of physical presence. A
4037 TCG platform specific specification MAY specify what mechanisms assert the physical
4038 presence signal.

4039 The platform manufacturer MUST provide for the physical presence assertion by some
4040 physical mechanism.

4041 **30.1 Use of Physical Presence**

4042 **Start of informative comment**

4043 For control purposes there are numerous commands on the TPM that require TPM Owner
4044 authorization. Included in this group of commands are those that turn the TPM on or off
4045 and those that define the operating modes of the TPM. The TPM Owner always has complete
4046 control of the TPM. What happens in two conditions: there is no TPM Owner or the TPM
4047 Owner forgets the TPM Owner AuthData value. Physical presence allows for an
4048 authorization to change the state in these two conditions.

4049 **No TPM Owner**

4050 This state occurs when the TPM ships from manufacturing (it can occur at other times
4051 also). There is no TPM Owner. It is imperative to protect the TPM from remote software
4052 processes that would attempt to gain control of the TPM. To indicate to the TPM that the
4053 TPM operating state can change (allow for the creation of the TPM Owner) the human
4054 asserts physical presence. The physical presence assertion then indicates to the TPM that
4055 changing the operating state of the TPM is authorized.

4056 **Lost TPM Owner authorization**

4057 In the case of lost, or forgotten, authorization there is a TPM Owner but no way to manage
4058 the TPM. If the TPM will only operate with the TPM Owner authorization then the TPM is no
4059 longer controllable. Here the operator of the machine asserts physical presence and
4060 removes the current TPM Owner. The assumption is that the operator will then immediately
4061 take ownership of the TPM and insert a new TPM Owner AuthData value.

4062 **Operator disabling**

4063 Another use of physical presence is to indicate that the operator wants to disable the use of
4064 the TPM. This allows the operator to temporarily turn off the TPM but not change the
4065 permanent operating mode of the TPM as set by the TPM Owner.

4066

End of informative comment

31. TPM Internal Asymmetric Encryption

Start of Informative comment

For asymmetric encryption schemes, the TPM is not required to perform the blocking of information where that information cannot be encrypted in a single cryptographic operation. The schemes TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1 and TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15 allow only single block encryption. When using these schemes, the caller to the TPM must perform any blocking and unblocking outside the TPM. It is the responsibility of the caller to ensure that multiple blocks are properly protected using a chaining mechanism.

Note that there are inherent dangers associated with splitting information so that it can be encrypted in multiple blocks with an asymmetric key, and then chaining together these blocks together. For example, if an integrity check mechanism is not used, an attacker can encrypt his own data using the public key, and substitute this rogue block for one of the original blocks in the message, thus forcing the TPM to replace part of the message upon decryption.

There is also a more subtle attack to discover the data encrypted in low-entropy blocks. The attacker makes a guess at the plaintext data, encrypts it, and substitutes the encrypted guess for the original block. When the TPM decrypts the complete message, a successful decryption will indicate that his guess was correct.

There are a number of solutions which could be considered for this problem – One such solution for TPMs supporting symmetric encryption is specified in PKCS#7, section 10, and involves using the public key to encrypt a symmetric key, then using that symmetric key to encrypt the long message.

For TPMs without symmetric encryption capabilities, an alternative solution may be to add random padding to each message block, thus increasing the block's entropy.

End of informative comment

1. For a TPM_UNBIND command where the parent key has pubKey.algorithmId equal to TPM_ALG_RSA and pubKey.encScheme set to TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15 the TPM SHALL NOT expect a PAYLOAD_TYPE structure to pre-pend the decrypted data.
2. The TPM MUST perform the encryption or decryption in accordance with the specification of the encryption scheme, as described below.
3. When a null terminated string is included in a calculation, the terminating null SHALL NOT be included in the calculation.

31.1.1 TPM_ES_RSAESOAEP_SHA1_MGF1

1. The encryption and decryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA_ES_OAEP defined in [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding operation.
2. Encryption
 - a. The OAEP encoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string “TCPA”.
 - b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCPA 1.1 TPM's

4107 c. If there is an error with the encryption, the TPM must return the error
4108 TPM_ENCRYPT_ERROR.

4109 3. Decryption

4110 a. The OAEP decoding P parameter MUST be the 4 character string “TCPA”.

4111 b. While the TCG now controls this specification the string value will NOT change to
4112 allow for interoperability and backward compatibility with TCG 1.1 TPM’s

4113 c. If there is an error with the decryption, the TPM must return the error
4114 TPM_DECRYPT_ERROR.

4115 **31.1.2 TPM_ES_RSAESPKCSV15**

4116 1. The encryption MUST be performed using the scheme RSA_ES_PKCSV15 defined in
4117 [PKCS #1v2.0: 7.2].

4118 2. Encryption

4119 a. If there is an error with the encryption, return the error TPM_ENCRYPT_ERROR.

4120 3. Decryption

4121 a. If there is an error with the decryption, return the error TPM_DECRYPT_ERROR.

4122 **31.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CNT**

4123 **Start of informative comment**

4124 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is
4125 at

4126 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

4127 The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, AES256 or 3DES. The
4128 definition for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

4129 **End of informative comment**

4130 1. Given a current counter value, the next counter value is obtained by treating the lower
4131 32 bits of the current counter value as an unsigned 32-bit integer x , then replacing the
4132 lower 32 bits of the current counter value with the bits of the incremented integer $(x + 1)$
4133 mod 2^{32} . This method is described in Appendix B.1 of the NIST document
4134 (b=32).30.1.3 TPM_ES_SYM_CNT

4135 **31.1.4 TPM_ES_SYM_OFB**

4136 **Start of informative comment**

4137 This defines an encryption mode in use with symmetric algorithms. The actual definition is
4138 at

4139 <http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-38a/sp800-38a.pdf>

4140 The underlying symmetric algorithm may be AES128, AES192, AES256 or 3DES. The
4141 definition for these algorithms is in the NIST document Appendix E.

4142 **End of informative comment**

4143 31.2 TPM Internal Digital Signatures

4144 Start of informative comment

4145 These values indicate the approved schemes in use by the TPM to generate digital
4146 signatures.

4147 End of informative comment

4148

4149 The TPM MUST perform the signature or verification in accordance with the specification of
4150 the signature scheme, as described below.

4151 31.2.1 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1

4152 1. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in
4153 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1] using SHA1 as the hash algorithm for the encoding operation.

4154 31.2.2 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER

4155 Start of informative comment

4156 This signature scheme is designed to permit inclusion of DER coded information before
4157 signing, which is inappropriate for most TPM capabilities

4158 End of informative comment

4159 1. The signature MUST be performed using the scheme RSASSA-PKCS1-v1.5 defined in
4160 [PKCS #1v2.0: 8.1]. The caller must properly format the area to sign using the DER
4161 rules. The provided area maximum size is k-11 octets.

4162 2. TPM_Sign SHALL be the only TPM capability that is permitted to use this signature
4163 scheme. If a capability other than TPM_Sign is requested to use this signature scheme,
4164 it SHALL fail with the error code TPM_INAPPROPRIATE_SIG

4165 31.2.3 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO

4166 Start of informative comment

4167 This signature scheme is designed to permit signatures on arbitrary information but also
4168 protect the signature mechanism from being misused.

4169 End of informative comment

4170 1. The scheme MUST work just as TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1V15_SHA1 except in the
4171 TPM_Sign command

4172 a. In the TPM_Sign command the scheme MUST use a properly constructed
4173 TPM_SIGN_INFO structure, and hash it before signing

4174 31.2.4 Use of Signature Schemes

4175 Start of informative comment

4176 The PKCS1v15_INFO scheme is a new addition for 1.2. It causes a new functioning for 1.1
4177 and 1.2 keys. The following details the use of the new scheme and how the TPM handles
4178 signatures and hashing

4179

End of informative comment

- 4180 1. For the commands (TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned, TPM_TickStampBlob,
4181 TPM_ReleaseTransportSigned):
- 4182 a. The TPM MUST create a TPM_SIGN_INFO and sign it using the key specified and
4183 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1
- 4184 2. For the commands (TPM_IdentityKey, TPM_Quote and TPM_CertifyKey):
- 4185 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and sign using
4186 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_SHA1 for either SHA1 or SIGN_INFO
- 4187 3. For TPM_Sign:
- 4188 a. Create the structure as defined by the command and key scheme
- 4189 b. If key->sigScheme is SHA1 sign the 20 byte parameter
- 4190 c. If key->sigScheme is DER, sign the DER value using
4191 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_DER
- 4192 d. If key->sigScheme is SIGN_INFO, sign any value using the SIGN_INFO structure and
4193 TPM_SS_RSASSAPKCS1v15_INFO
- 4194 4. When data is signed and the data comes from INSIDE the TPM, the TPM is MUST do the
4195 hash, and prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and
4196 private key operation.
- 4197 5. When data is signed and the data comes from OUTSIDE the TPM, the software, not the
4198 TPM, MUST do the hash.
- 4199 6. When the TPM knows, or is told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the TPM
4200 MUST prepend the DER encoding correctly before performing the padding and private
4201 key operation
- 4202 7. When the TPM does not know, or told by implication, that the hash used is SHA-1, the
4203 software, not the TPM) MUST provide the DER encoding to be prepended.
- 4204 8. The TPM MUST perform the padding and private key operation in any signing operations
4205 it does.

4206 **32. Key Usage Table**

4207 This table summarizes the types of keys associated with a given TPM command.

4208 It is the responsibility of each command to check the key usage prior to executing the
4209 command

Name	First Key	Second Key	First Key						Second Key								
			SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY	SIGNING	STORAGE	IDENTITY	AUTHCHG	BIND	LEGACY			
TPM_ActivateIdentity	idKey				x												
TPM_CertifyKey	certKey	inKey	x		x			x	x	x			x	x			
TPM_CertifyKey2 (Note 3)	certKey	inKey	x		x			x	x	x			x	x			
TPM_CertifySelfTest	key		x		x			x									
TPM_ChangeAuth	parent	blob		x					2	2	2	2	2	2	2		
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymFinish	parent	ephemeral		x									x				
TPM_ChangeAuthAsymStart	idKey	ephemeral			x								x				
TPM_CMK_ConvertMigration	parent			x													
TPM_CMK_CreateBlob	parent			x													
TPM_CMK_CreateKey	parent			x													
TPM_ConvertMigrationBlob	parent			x													
TPM_CreateMigrationBlob	parent	blob		x					2	2	2	2	2	2	2		
TPM_CreateWrapKey	parent			x													
TPM_Delegate_CreateKeyDelegation	key		x	x	x	x	x	x									
TPM_DSAP	entity		x	x	x	x	x	x									
TPM_EstablishTransport	key			x													x
TPM_GetAuditDigestSigned	certKey		x		x												x
TPM_GetAuditEventSigned	certKey		x														x
TPM_GetCapabilitySigned	key		x		x												x
TPM_GetPubKey	key		x	x	x	x	x	x									
TPM_KeyControlOwner	key		x	x	x												x
TPM_LoadKey2	parent	inKey		x									x	x	x		x
TPM_LoadKey	parent	inKey		x									x	x	x		x
TPM_MigrateKey	maKey			1													

TPM_OSAP	entity	x	x	x	x	x	x
TPM_Quote	key	x		x			x
TPM_Quote2	key	x		x			x
TPM_Seal	key			x			
TPM_Sealx	key			x			
TPM_Sign	key	x					x
TPM_UnBind	key					x	x
TPM_Unseal	parent			x			
TPM_ReleaseTransport	key	x					

4210 **Notes**

4211 1 – Key is not a storage key but TPM_MIGRATE_KEY

4212 2 – TPM unable to determine key type

4213 3 – The order is correct; the reason is to support a single auth version.

33. Direct Anonymous Attestation

Start of informative comment

DAA_Join and DAA_Sign are highly resource intensive commands. They require most of the internal TPM resources to accomplish the complete set of operations. A TPM may specify that no other commands are possible during the join or sign operations. To allow for other operations to occur the TPM does allow the TPM_SaveContext command to save off the current join or sign operation.

Operations that occur during a join or sign result in the loss of the join or sign session in favour of the interrupting command.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST support one concurrent TPM_Join or TPM_Sign session. The TPM MAY support additional sessions
2. The TPM MAY invalidate a join or sign session upon the receipt of any additional command other than the join/sign or TPM_SaveContext

33.1 TPM_DAA_JOIN

Start of informative comment

TPM_DAA_Join creates new JOIN data. If a TPM supports only one JOIN/SIGN operation, TPM_DAA_Join invalidates any previous DAA attestation information inside a TPM. The JOIN phase of a DAA context requires a TPM to communicate with an issuer. TPM_DAA_Join outputs data to be sent to an issuing authority and receives data from that issuing authority. The operation potentially requires several seconds to complete, but is done in a series of atomic stages and TPM_SaveContext/RestoreContext can be used to cache data off-TPM inbetween atomic stages.

The JOIN process is designed so a TPM will normally receive exactly the same DAA credentials from a given issuer, no matter how many times the JOIN process is executed and no matter whether the issuer changes his keys. This property is necessary because an issuer must give DAA credentials to a platform after verifying that the platform has the architecture of a trusted platform. Unless the issuer repeats the verification process, there is no justification for giving different DAA credentials to the same platform. Even after repeating the verification process, the issuer should give replacement (different) DAA credentials only when it is necessary to retire the old DAA credentials. Replacement DAA credentials erase the previous DAA history of the platform, at least as far as the DAA credentials from that issuer are concerned. Replacement might be desirable, as when a platform changes hands, for example, in order to eliminate any association via DAA between the seller and the buyer. On the other hand, replacement might be undesirable, since it enables a rogue to rejoin a community from which he has been barred. Replacement is done by submitting a different “count” value to the TPM during a JOIN process. A platform may use any value of “count” at any time, in any order, but only “counts” accepted by the issuer will elicit DAA credentials from that issuer.

The TPM is forced to verify an issuer’s public parameters before using an issuer’s public parameters. This verification provides proof that the public parameters (which include a public key) were approved by an entity that knows the private key corresponding to that public key; in other words that the JOIN has previously been approved by the issuer. This

4257 verification is necessary to prevent an attack by a rogue using a genuine issuer's public
4258 parameters, which could reveal the secret created by the TPM using those public
4259 parameters. Verification uses a signature (provided by the issuer) over the public
4260 parameters.

4261 The exponent of the issuer's key is fixed at $2^{16}+1$, because this is the only size of exponent
4262 that a TPM is required to support. The modulus of the issuer's public key is used to create
4263 the pseudonym with which the TPM contacts the issuer. Hence the TPM cannot produce the
4264 same pseudonym for different issuers (who have different keys). The pseudonym is always
4265 created using the issuer's first key, even if the issuer changes keys, in order to produce the
4266 property described earlier. The issuer proves to the TPM that he has the right to use that
4267 first key to create a pseudonym by creating a chain of signatures from the first key to the
4268 current key, and submitting those signatures to the TPM. The method has the desirable
4269 property that only signatures and the most recent private key need be retained by the
4270 issuer: once the latest link in the signature chain has been created, previous private keys
4271 can be discarded.

4272 The use of atomic operations minimises the contiguous time that a TPM is busy with
4273 TPM_DAA_Join and hence unavailable for other commands. JOIN can therefore be done as
4274 a background activity without inconveniencing a user. The use of atomic operations also
4275 minimises the peak value of TPM resources consumed by the JOIN phase.

4276 The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the
4277 same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same JOIN process.
4278 DAA_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA_issuerSettings
4279 structure, and DAA_session contains a digest of associated DAA_tpmSpecific and
4280 DAA_joinSession structures. Each atomic operation verifies digests to ensure use of
4281 mutually consistent sets of DAA_issuerSettings, DAA_tpmSpecific, DAA_session, and
4282 DAA_joinSession data.

4283 JOIN operations and data structures are designed to minimise the amount of data that
4284 must be stored on a TPM inbetween atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually
4285 consistent sets of data. Digests of public data are held in the TPM between atomic
4286 operations, instead of the actual public data (if a digest is smaller than the actual data). In
4287 each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any public data loaded and used in
4288 that operation matches the stored digest. Thus non-secret DAA_generic_X parameters
4289 (loaded into the TPM only when required), are checked using digests DAA_digest_X
4290 (preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA_issuerSettings).

4291 JOIN includes a challenge from the issuer, in order to defeat simple Denial of Service
4292 attacks on the issuer's server by rogues pretending to be arbitrary TPMs.

4293 A first group of atomic operations generate all TPM-data that must be sent to the issuer.
4294 The platform performs other operations (that do not need to be trusted) using the TPM-data,
4295 and sends the resultant data to the issuer. The issuer sends values u2 and u3 back to the
4296 TPM. A second group of atomic operations accepts this data from the issuer and completes
4297 the protocol.

4298 The TPM outputs encrypted forms of DAA_tpmSpecific, v0 and v1. These encrypted data are
4299 later interpreted by the same TPM and not by any other entity, so any manufacturer-
4300 specific wrapping can be used. It is suggested, however, that enc(DAA_tpmSpecific) or
4301 enc(v0) or enc(v1) data should be created by adapting a TPM_CONTEXT_BLOB structure.

4302 After executing TPM_DAA_join, it is prudent to perform TPM_DAA_sign, to verify that the
4303 JOIN process completed correctly. A host platform may choose to verify JOIN by performing
4304 TPM_DAA_sign as both the target and the verifier (or could, of course, use an external
4305 verifier).

4306 **End of informative comment**

4307 **33.2 TPM_DAA_Sign**

4308 **Start of informative comment**

4309 TPM_DAA_Sign responds to a challenge and proves the attestation held by a TPM without
4310 revealing the attestation held by that TPM. The operation is done in a series of atomic
4311 stages to minimise the contiguous time that a TPM is busy and hence unavailable for other
4312 commands. TPM_SaveContext can be used to save a DAA context inbetween atomic stages.
4313 This enables the response to the challenge to be done as a background activity without
4314 inconveniencing a user, and also minimises the peak value of TPM resources consumed by
4315 the process.

4316 The use of atomic operations introduces a need for consistency checks, to ensure that the
4317 same parameters are used in all atomic operations of the same SIGN process.
4318 DAA_tpmSpecific therefore contains a digest of the associated DAA_issuerSettings
4319 structure, and DAA_session contains a digest of associated DAA_tpmSpecific structure.
4320 Each atomic operation verifies these digests and hence ensures use of mutually consistent
4321 sets of DAA_issuerSettings, DAA_tpmSpecific, and DAA_session data.

4322 SIGN operations and data structures are designed to minimise the amount of data that
4323 must be stored on a TPM inbetween atomic operations, while ensuring use of mutually
4324 consistent sets of data. Digests of public and private data are held in the TPM between
4325 atomic operations, instead of the actual public or private data (if a digest is smaller than the
4326 actual data). At each atomic operation, consistency checks verify that any data loaded and
4327 used in that operation matches the stored digest. Thus parameters DAA_digest_X are
4328 digests (preloaded into the TPM in the structure DAA_issuerSettings) of non-secret
4329 DAA_generic_X parameters (loaded into the TPM only when required), for example.

4330 The design enables the use of any number of issuer DAA-data, private DAA-data, and so on.
4331 Strictly, the design is that the *TPM* puts no limit on the number of sets of issuer DAA-
4332 data or sets of private DAA-data, or restricts what set is in the TPM at any time, but
4333 supports only one DAA-context in the TPM at any instant. Any number of DAA-contexts
4334 can, of course, be swapped in and out of the TPM using saveContext /loadContext, so
4335 applications do not perceive a limit on the number of DAA-contexts.

4336 TPM_DAA_Sign accepts a freshness challenge from the verifier and generate all TPM-data
4337 that must be sent to the verifier. The platform performs other operations (that do not need
4338 to be trusted) using the TPM-data, and sends the resultant data to the verifier. At one stage,
4339 the TPM incorporates a loaded public (non-migratable) key into the protocol. This is
4340 intended to permit the setup of a session, for any specific purpose, including doing the
4341 same job in TPM_ActivateIdentity as the EK.

4342 **End of informative comment**

4343 **33.3 DAA Command summary**

4344 **Start of informative comment**

4345 The following is a conceptual summary of the operations that are necessary to setup a TPM
4346 for DAA, execute the JOIN process, and execute the SIGN process.

4347 The summary is partitioned according to the “stages” of the actual TPM commands. Thus
4348 the operations listed in JOIN under stage-2 briefly describe the operation of TPM_DAA_join
4349 at stage-2, for example.

4350 This summary is in place to help in the connection between the mathematical definition of
4351 DAA and this implementation in a TPM.

4352 **End of informative comment**

4353 **33.3.1 TPM setup**

4354 1. A TPM generates a TPM-specific secret S (160-bit) from the RNG and stores S in
4355 nonvolatile store on the TPM. This value will never be disclosed and changed by the
4356 TPM.

4357 **33.3.2 JOIN**

4358 **Start of informative comment**

4359 This entire section is informative

4360 1. When the following is performed, this process does not increment the stage counter.

4361 a. TPM imports a non-secret values n0 (2048-bit).

4362 b. TPM computes a non-secret value N0 (160-bit) = H(n0).

4363 c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret DAA_rekey (160-bit) = H(S, H(n0)).

4364 d. TPM stores a self-consistent set of (N0, DAA_rekey)

4365 2. The following is performed 0 or several times: (Note: If the stage mechanism is being
4366 used, then this branch does not increment the stage counter.)

4367 a. TPM imports

4368 i. a self consistent set of (N0, DAA_rekey)

4369 ii. a non-secret value DAA_SEED_KEY (2048-bit)

4370 iii. a non-secret value DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY (2048-bit)

4371 iv. a non-secret value SIG_DSK (2048-bit)

4372 b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = H(DAA_SEED_KEY)

4373 c. If DIGEST != N0, TPM refuses to continue

4374 d. If DIGEST == N0, TPM verifies validity of signature SIG_DSK on
4375 DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY with key (DAA_SEED_KEY, e0 (= 2¹⁶ + 1)) by using
4376 TPM_Sign_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to continue.

4377 e. TPM sets N0 = H(DEPENDENT_SEED_KEY)

4378 f. TPM stores a self consistent set of (N0, DAA_JOIN)

4379 3. Stage 2

4380 a. TPM imports a set of values, including

- 4381 i. a non-secret value n_0 (2048-bit),
- 4382 ii. a non-secret value R_0 (2048-bit),
- 4383 iii. a non-secret value R_1 (2048-bit),
- 4384 iv. a non-secret value S_0 (2048-bit),
- 4385 v. a non-secret value S_1 (2048-bit),
- 4386 vi. a non-secret value n (2048-bit),
- 4387 vii. a non-secret value n_1 (1024-bit),
- 4388 viii. a non-secret value γ (2048-bit),
- 4389 ix. a non-secret value q (208-bit),
- 4390 x. a non-secret value COUNT (8-bit),
- 4391 xi. a self consistent set of (N_0 , DAA_rekey).
- 4392 xii. TPM saves them as part of a new set A.
- 4393 b. TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = $H(n_0)$
- 4394 c. If DIGEST $\neq N_0$, TPM refuses to continue.
- 4395 d. If DIGEST == N_0 , TPM computes DIGEST (160-bit) = $H(R_0, R_1, S_0, S_1, n, n_1, \Gamma, q)$
- 4396 e. TPM imports a non-secret value SIG_ISSUER_KEY (2048-bit).
- 4397 f. TPM verifies validity of signature SIG_ISSUER_KEY (2048-bit) on DIGEST with key (n_0 ,
4398 e_0) by using TPM_Sign_Verify (based on PKCS#1 2.0). If check fails, TPM refuses to
4399 continue.
- 4400 g. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f (208-bit) = $H(\text{DAA_rekey}, \text{COUNT},$
4401 $0) \parallel H(\text{DAA_rekey}, \text{COUNT}, 1) \bmod q$.
- 4402 h. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f_0 (104-bit) = $f \bmod 2^{104}$.
- 4403 i. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret f_1 (104-bit) = $f \gg 104$.
- 4404 j. TPM save f , f_0 and f_1 as part of set A.
- 4405 4. Stage 3
- 4406 a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret u_0 (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- 4407 b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret u'_1 (1104-bit) from the RNG.
- 4408 c. TPM computes u_1 (1024-bit) = $u'_1 \bmod n_1$.
- 4409 d. TPM stores u_0 and u_1 as part of set A.
- 4410 5. Stage 4
- 4411 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_1 (2048-bit) = $(R_0^{f_0}) \bmod n$ and stores P_1 as part of
4412 set A.
- 4413 6. Stage 5
- 4414 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_2 (2048-bit) = $P_1 \cdot (R_1^{f_1}) \bmod n$, stores P_2 as part of
4415 set A and erases P_1 from set A.
- 4416 7. Stage 6

- 4417 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P3$ (2048-bit) = $P2*(S0^{u0}) \bmod n$, stores $P3$ as part of
4418 set A and erases $P2$ from set A .
- 4419 8. Stage 7
- 4420 a. TPM computes a non-secret value U (2048-bit) = $P3*(S1^{u1}) \bmod n$.
- 4421 b. TPM erases $P3$ from set A
- 4422 c. TPM computes and saves $U1$ (160-bit) = $H(U || COUNT || N0)$ as part of set A .
- 4423 d. TPM exports U .
- 4424 9. Stage 8
- 4425 a. TPM imports ENC_NE (2048-bit).
- 4426 b. TPM decrypts NE (160-bit) from ENC_NE (2048-bit) by using $privEK$: $NE =$
4427 $decrypt(privEK, ENC_NE)$.
- 4428 c. TPM computes $U2$ (160-bit) = $H(U1 || NE)$.
- 4429 d. TPM erases $U1$ from set A .
- 4430 e. TPM exports $U2$.
- 4431 10. Stage 9
- 4432 a. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r0$ (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4433 b. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r1$ (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4434 c. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r2$ (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- 4435 d. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret $r3$ (1264-bit) from the RNG.
- 4436 e. TPM stores $r0, r1, r2, r3$ as part of set A .
- 4437 f. TPM computes a non-secret value $P1$ (2048-bit) = $(R0^{r0}) \bmod n$ and stores $P1$ as part of
4438 set A .
- 4439 11. Stage 10
- 4440 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P2$ (2048-bit) = $P1*(R1^{r1}) \bmod n$, stores $P2$ as part of
4441 set A and erases $P1$ from set A .
- 4442 12. Stage 11
- 4443 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P3$ (2048-bit) = $P2*(S0^{r2}) \bmod n$, stores $P3$ as part of
4444 set A and erases $P2$ from set A .
- 4445 13. Stage 12
- 4446 a. TPM computes a non-secret value $P4$ (2048-bit) = $P3*(S1^{r3}) \bmod n$, stores $P4$ as part of
4447 set A and erases $P3$ from set A .
- 4448 b. TPM exports $P4$.
- 4449 14. Stage 13
- 4450 a. TPM imports w (2048-bit).
- 4451 b. TPM computes $w1 = w^q \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4452 c. TPM verifies if $w1 = 1$ holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.

- 4453 d. If it does hold, TPM saves w as part of set A.
- 4454 15.Stage 14
- 4455 a. TPM computes a non-secret value E (2048-bit) = $w^f \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4456 b. TPM exports E .
- 4457 16.Stage 15
- 4458 a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret r (208-bit) = $r_0 + 2^{104} * r_1 \bmod q$.
- 4459 b. TPM computes a non-secret value E_1 (2048-bit) = $w^r \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4460 c. TPM exports E_1 and erases w from set A.
- 4461 17.Stage 16
- 4462 a. TPM imports a non-secret value c_1 (160-bit).
- 4463 b. TPM generates a non-secret value NT (160-bit) from the RNG.
- 4464 c. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c_1 || NT)$.
- 4465 d. TPM save c as part of set A.
- 4466 e. TPM exports NT
- 4467 18.Stage 17
- 4468 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_0 (352-bit) = $r_0 + c * f_0$ over the integers.
- 4469 b. TPM exports s_0 .
- 4470 19.Stage 18
- 4471 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_1 (352-bit) = $r_1 + c * f_1$ over the integers.
- 4472 b. TPM exports s_1 .
- 4473 20.Stage 19
- 4474 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_2 (1024-bit) = $r_2 + c * u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.
- 4475 b. TPM exports s_2 .
- 4476 21.Stage 20
- 4477 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s'_2 (1024-bit) = $(r_2 + c * u_0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.
- 4478 b. TPM saves s'_2 as part of set A.
- 4479 c. TPM exports c
- 4480 22.Stage 21
- 4481 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_3 (1272-bit) = $r_3 + c * u_1 + s'_2$ over the integers.
- 4482 b. TPM exports s_3 and erases s'_2 from set A.
- 4483 23.Stage 22
- 4484 a. TPM imports a non-secret value u_2 (1024-bit).
- 4485 b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret v_0 (1024-bit) = $u_2 + u_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.
- 4486 c. TPM stores v_0 as part of A.

4487 d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $v'0$ (1024-bit) = $(u2 + u0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.

4488 e. TPM saves $v'0$ as part of set A.

4489 24.Stage 23

4490 a. TPM imports a non-secret value $u3$ (1512-bit).

4491 b. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $v1$ (1520-bit) = $u3 + u1 + v'0$ over the integers.

4492 c. TPM stores $v1$ as part of A.

4493 d. TPM erases $v'0$ from set A.

4494 25.Stage 24

4495 a. TPM makes self consistent set of all the data ($n0$, COUNT, R0, R1, S0, S1, n , Γ , q , $v0$,
4496 $v1$), where the values $v0$, $v1$ are secret – they need to be stored safely with the consistent
4497 set, and the remaining is non-secret.

4498 b. TPM erases set A.

4499 **End of informative comment**

4500 **33.3.3 SIGN**

4501 **Start of informative comment**

4502 This entire section is informative

4503 1. Stage 0 & 1

4504 a. TPM imports and verifies a self consistent set of all the data including:

4505 i. $n0$ (2048-bit),

4506 ii. COUNT (8-bit),

4507 iii. R0 (2048-bit),

4508 iv. R1 (2048-bit),

4509 v. S0 (2048-bit),

4510 vi. S1 (2048-bit),

4511 vii. n (2048-bit),

4512 viii. γ (2048-bit),

4513 ix. q (208-bit),

4514 x. $v0$ (1024-bit),

4515 xi. $v1$ (1520-bit).

4516 xii. If the verification does not succeed, TPM refuses to continue.

4517 b. TPM stores the above values as part of a new set A.

4518 c. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $f0$ (104-bit) = $f \bmod 2104$.

4519 d. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret $f1$ (104-bit) = $f \gg 104$.

4520 e. TPM stores $f0$ and $f1$ as part of set A.

- 4521 f. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_0 (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4522 g. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_1 (344-bit) from the RNG.
- 4523 h. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_2 (1024-bit) from the RNG.
- 4524 i. TPM generates a TPM-specific secret r_4 (1752-bit) from the RNG.
- 4525 j. TPM stores r_0 , r_1 , r_2 , r_4 , as part of set A.
- 4526 2. Stage 2
- 4527 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_1 (2048-bit) = $(R_0^{r_0}) \bmod n$ and stores P_1 as part of
4528 set A.
- 4529 3. Stage 3
- 4530 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_2 (2048-bit) = $P_1 \cdot (R_1^{r_1}) \bmod n$, stores P_2 as part of
4531 set A and erases P_1 from set A.
- 4532 4. Stage 4
- 4533 a. TPM computes a non-secret value P_3 (2048-bit) = $P_2 \cdot (S_0^{r_2}) \bmod n$, stores P_3 as part of
4534 set A and erases P_2 from set A.
- 4535 5. Stage 5
- 4536 a. TPM computes a non-secret value T (2048-bit) = $P_3 \cdot (S_1^{r_4}) \bmod n$.
- 4537 b. TPM erases P_3 from set A.
- 4538 c. TPM exports T .
- 4539 6. Stage 6
- 4540 a. TPM imports a non-secret value w (2048-bit).
- 4541 b. TPM computes $w_1 = w^q \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4542 c. TPM verifies if $w_1 = 1$ holds. If it doesn't hold, TPM refuses to continue.
- 4543 d. If it does hold, TPM saves w as part of set A.
- 4544 7. Stage 7
- 4545 a. TPM computes a non-secret value E (2048-bit) = $w^f \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4546 b. TPM exports E and erases f from set A.
- 4547 8. Stage 8
- 4548 a. TPM computes a TPM-specific secret r (208-bit) = $r_0 + 2^{104} \cdot r_1 \bmod q$.
- 4549 b. TPM computes a non-secret value E_1 (2048-bit) = $w^r \bmod \Gamma$.
- 4550 c. TPM exports E_1 and erases w and E_1 from set A.
- 4551 9. Stage 9
- 4552 a. TPM imports a non-secret value c_1 (160-bit).
- 4553 b. TPM generates a non-secret value NT (160-bit) from the RNG.
- 4554 c. TPM computes a non-secret value c_2 (160-bit) = $H(c_1 || NT)$ and erases c_1 from set A.
- 4555 d. TPM saves c_2 as part of set A.

- 4556 e. TPM exports NT.
- 4557 10.Stage 10
- 4558 a. TPM imports a non-secret value b (1-bit).
- 4559 b. If $b = 1$, TPM imports a non-secret value m (160-bit).
- 4560 c. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c2 || b || m)$ and erases $c2$ from set A.
- 4561 d. If $b = 0$, TPM imports an RSA public key, e_{AIK} ($= 2^{16} + 1$) and n_{AIK} (2048-bit).
- 4562 e. TPM computes a non-secret value c (160-bit) = $H(c2 || b || n_{AIK})$ and erases $c2$ from set
4563 A.
- 4564 f. TPM exports c .
- 4565 11.Stage 11
- 4566 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_0 (352-bit) = $r_0 + c \cdot f_0$ over the integers.
- 4567 b. TPM exports s_0 .
- 4568 12.Stage 12
- 4569 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_1 (352-bit) = $r_1 + c \cdot f_1$ over the integers.
- 4570 b. TPM exports s_1 .
- 4571 13.Stage 13
- 4572 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_2 (1024-bit) = $r_2 + c \cdot v_0 \bmod 2^{1024}$.
- 4573 b. TPM exports s_2 .
- 4574 14.Stage 14
- 4575 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s'_2 (1024-bit) = $(r_2 + c \cdot v_0) \gg 1024$ over the integers.
- 4576 b. TPM saves s'_2 as part of set A.
- 4577 15.Stage 15
- 4578 a. TPM computes a non-secret value s_3 (1760-bit) = $r_4 + c \cdot v_1 + s'_2$ over the integers.
- 4579 b. TPM exports s_3 and erases s'_2 from set A.
- 4580 c. TPM erases set A.
- 4581 **End of informative comment**

34. General Purpose IO

Start of informative comment

The GPIO capability allows an outside entity to output a signal on a GPIO pin, or read the status of a GPIO pin. The solution is for a single pin, with no timing information. There is no support for sending information on specific busses like SMBus or RS232. The design does support the designation of more than one GPIO pin.

There is no requirement as to the layout of the GPIO pin, or the routing of the wire from the GPIO pin on the platform. A platform specific specification can add those requirements.

To avoid the designation of additional command ordinals, the architecture uses the NV Storage commands. A set of GPIO NV indexes map to individual GPIO pins. TPM_NV_INDEX_GPIO_00 maps to the first GPIO pin. The platform specific specification indicates the mapping of GPIO zero to a specific package pin.

The TPM does not reserve any NV storage for the indicated pin; rather the TPM uses the authorization mechanisms for NV storage to allow a rich set of controls on the use of the GPIO pin. The TPM owner can specify when and how the platform can use the GPIO pin. While there is no NV storage for the pin value, TRUE or FALSE, there is NV storage for the authorization requirements for the pin.

Using the NV attributes the GPIO pin may be either an input pin or an output pin.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MAY support the use of a GPIO pin defined by the NV storage mechanisms.
2. The GPIO pin MAY be either an input or an output pin.

35. Redirection

Informative comment

Redirection allows the TPM to output the results of operations to hardware other than the normal TPM communication bus. The redirection can occur to areas internal or external to the TPM. Redirection is only available to key operations (such as TPM_Unbind, TPM_Unseal, and TPM_GetPubKey). To use redirection the key must be created specifying redirection as one of the keys attributes.

When redirecting the output the TPM will not interpret any of the data and will pass the data on without any modifications.

The TPM_SetRedirection command connects a destination location or port to a loaded key. This connection remains so long as the key is loaded, and is saved along with other key information on a saveContext(key), loadContext(key). If the key is reloaded using TPM_LoadKey, then TPM_SetRedirection must be run again.

Any use of TPM_SetRedirection with a key that does not have the redirect attribute must return an error. Use of key that has the redirect attribute without TPM_SetRedirection being set must return an error.

End of informative comments

1. The TPM MAY support redirection
2. If supported, the TPM MUST only use redirection on keys that have the redirect attribute set
3. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key MUST be a leaf key in the TPM Protected Storage blob hierarchy. A key that is tagged as a “redirect” key CAN NEVER be a parent key.
4. Output data that is the result of a cryptographic operation using the private portion of a “redirect” key:
 - a. MUST be passed to an alternate output channel
 - b. MUST NOT be passed to the normal output channel
 - c. MUST NOT be interpreted by the TPM
5. When command input or output is redirected the TPM MUST respond to the command as soon as the ordinal finishes processing
 - a. The TPM MUST indicate to any subsequent commands that the TPM is busy and unable to accept additional command until the redirection is complete
 - b. The TPM MUST allow for the resetting of the redirection channel
6. Redirection MUST be available for the following commands:
 - a. TPM_Unseal
 - b. TPM_Unbind
 - c. TPM_GetPubKey
 - d. TPM_Seal
 - e. TPM_Quote

36. Structure Versioning

Start of informative comment

In version 1.1 some structures also contained a version indicator. The TPM set the indicator to indicate the version of the TPM that was creating the structure. This was incorrect behavior. The functionality of determining the version of a structure is radically different in 1.2.

Most structures will contain a TPM_STRUCTURE_TAG. All future structures must contain the tag, the only structures that do not contain the tag are 1.1 structures that are not modified in 1.2. This restriction keeps backwards compatibility with 1.1.

Any 1.2 structure must not contain a 1.1 tagged structure. For instance the TPM_KEY complex, if set at 1.2, must not contain a PCR_INFO structure. The TPM_KEY 1.2 structure must contain a PCR_INFO_LONG structure. The converse is also true 1.1 structures must not contain any 1.2 structures.

The TPM must not allow the creation of any mixed structures. This implies that a command that deals with keys, for instance, must ensure that a complete 1.1 or 1.2 structure is properly built and validated on the creation and use of the key.

The tag structure is set as a UINT16. This allows for a reasonable number of structures without wasting space in the buffers.

To obtain the current TPM version the caller must use the GetCapability command.

The tag is not a complete validation of the validity of a structure. The tag provides a reference for the structure and the TPM or caller is responsible for determining the validity of any remaining fields. For instance, in the TPM_KEY structure the tag would indicate TPM_KEY but the TPM would still use tpmProof and the various digests to ensure the structure integrity.

7. Compatibility and notification

In 1.1 TPM_CAP_VERSION (index 19) returned a version structure with 1.1.x.x. The x.x was for manufacturer information and the x.x also was set version structures. In 1.2 TPM_CAP_VERSION will return 1.1.0.0. Any 1.2 structure that uses the version information will set the x.x to 0.0 in the structure. TPM_CAP_MANUFACTURER_VER (index 21) will return 1.2.x.x. The 1.2 structures do not contain the version structure. The rationale behind this is that the structure tag will indicate the version of the structure. So changing a current structure will result in a new tag and there is no need for a separate version structure.

For further compatibility the quote function always returns 1.1.0.0 in the version information regardless of the size of the incoming structure. All other functions may regard a 2 byte sizeofselect structure as indicative of a 1.1 structure. The TPM handles all of the structures according to the input, the only exception being TPM_CertifyKey where the TPM does not need to keep the input version of the structure.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST support 1.1 and 1.2 defined structures
2. The TPM MUST ensure that 1.1 and 1.2 structures are not mixed in the same overall structure

- 4683 a. For instance in the TPM_KEY structure if the structure is 1.1 then PCR_INFO MUST
4684 be set and if 1.2 the PCR_INFO_LONG structure must be set
- 4685 3. On input the TPM MUST ignore the lower two bytes of the version structure
- 4686 4. On output the TPM MUST set the lower two bytes to 0 of the version structure

4687 **37. Certified Migration Key Type**

4688 **Start of informative comment**

4689 In version 1.1 there were two key types, non-migration and migration keys. The TPM would
4690 only certify non-migrating keys. There is a need for a key that allows migration but allows
4691 for certification. This proposal is to create a key that allows for migration but still has
4692 properties that the TPM can certify.

4693 These new keys are “certifiable migratable keys” or CMK. This designation is to separate the
4694 keys from either the normal migration or non-migration types of keys. The TPM Owner is
4695 not required to use these keys.

4696 Two entities may participate in the CMK process. The first is the Migration-Selection
4697 Authority and the second is the Migration Authority (MA).

4698 **Migration Selection Authority (MSA)**

4699 The MSA controls the migration of the key but does not handle the migrated itself.

4700 **Migration Authority (MA)**

4701 A Migration Authority actually handles the migrated key.

4702 **Use of MSA and MA**

4703 Migration of a CMK occurs using TPM_CMK_CreateBlob (TPM_CreateMigrationBlob cannot
4704 be used). The TPM Owner authorizes the migration destination (as usual), and the key
4705 owner authorizes the migration transformation (as usual). An MSA authorizes the migration
4706 destination as well. If the MSA is the migration destination, no MSA authorization is
4707 required.

4708 **End of informative comment**

4709 **37.1 Certified Migration Requirements**

4710 **Start of informative comment**

4711 The following list details the design requirements for the controlled migration keys

4712 **Key Protections**

4713 The key must be protected by hardware and an entity trusted by the key user.

4714 **Key Certification**

4715 The TPM must provide a mechanism to provide certification of the key protections (both
4716 hardware and trusted entity)

4717 **Owner Control**

4718 The TPM Owner must control the selection of the trusted entity

4719 **Control Delegation**

4720 The TPM Owner may delegate the ability to create the keys but the decision must be explicit

4721 **Linkage**

4722 The architecture must not require linking the trusted entity and the key user

4723 **Key Type**

4724 The key may be any type of migratable key (storage or signing)

4725 **Interaction**

4726 There must be no required interaction between the trusted entity and the TPM during the
4727 key creation process

4728 **End of informative comment**

4729 **37.2 Key Creation**

4730 **Start of informative comment**

4731 The command TPM_CMK_CreateKey creates a CMK where control of the migration is by a
4732 MSA or MA. The process uses the MSA public key (actually a digest of the MA public key) as
4733 input to TPM_CMK_CreateKey. The key creation process establishes a migrationAuth that is
4734 SHA-1(tpmProof || SHA-1(MA pubkey) || SHA-1(source pubkey)).

4735 The use of tpmProof is essential to prove that CMK creation occurs on a TPM. The use of
4736 “source pubkey” explicitly links a migration AuthData value to a particular public key, to
4737 simplify verification that a specific key is being migrated.

4738 **End of informative comment**

4739 **37.3 Migrate CMK to a MA**

4740 **Start of informative comment**

4741 Migration of a CMK to a destination other than the MSA:

4742 **TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation**

4743 The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using
4744 TPM_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination
4745 migrationKey, the migrationScheme (which must be set to TPM_MS_RESTRICT_APPROVE
4746 or TPM_MS_RESTRICT_APPROVE_DOUBLE) and a digest of tpmProof.

4747 **MA Approval**

4748 The MA signs a TPM_CMK_AUTH structure, which contains the digest of the MA public key,
4749 the digest of the destination (or parent) public key and a digest of the public portion of the
4750 key to be migrated

4751 **TPM Owner Authorization**

4752 The TPM Owner authorizes the MA approval using TPM_CMK_CreateTicket and produces a
4753 signature ticket

4754 **Key Owner Authorization**

4755 The CMK owner passes the TPM Owner MA authorization, the MSA Approval and the
4756 signature ticket to the TPM_CMK_CreateBlob using the key owners authorization.

4757 Thus the TPM owner, the key’s owner, and the MSA, all cooperate to migrate a key
4758 produced by TPM_CMK_CreateBlob.

4759 **End of informative comment**

4760 **37.4 Migrate CMK to a MSA**

4761 **Start of informative comment**

4762 Migrate CMK directly to a MSA

4763 **TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH Creation**

4764 The TPM Owner authorizes the creation of a TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH structure using
4765 TPM_AuthorizeMigrationKey command. The structure contains the destination
4766 migrationKey (which must be the MSA public key), the migrationScheme (which must be set
4767 to TPM_MS_RESTRICT_MIGRATE) and a digest of tpmProof.

4768 **Key Owner Authorization**

4769 The CMK owner passes the TPM_MIGRATIONKEYAUTH to the TPM in a
4770 TPM_CMK_CreateBlob using the CMK owner authorization.

4771 **Double Wrap**

4772 If specified, through the MS_MIGRATE scheme, the TPM double wraps the CMK information
4773 such that the only way a recipient can unwrap the key is with the cooperation of the CMK
4774 owner.

4775 **Proof of Control**

4776 To prove to the MA and to a third party that migration of a key is under MSA control, a
4777 caller passes the MA's public key (actually its digest) to TPM_CertifyKey, to create a
4778 TPM_CERTIFY_INFO structure. This now contains a digest of the MA's public key.

4779 A CMK be produced without cooperation from the MA: the caller merely provides the MSA's
4780 public key. When the restricted key is to be migrated, the public key of the intended
4781 destination, plus the CERTIFY_INFO structure are sent to the MSA. The MSA extracts the
4782 migrationAuthority digest from the CERTIFY_INFO structure, verifies that
4783 migrationAuthority corresponds to the MSA's public key, creates and signs a
4784 TPM_RESTRICTEDKEYAUTH structure, and sends that signature back to the caller. Thus
4785 the MSA never needs to touch the actual migrated data.

4786 **End of informative comment**

38. Revoke Trust

Start of informative comment

There are circumstances where clearing all keys and values within the TPM is either desirable or necessary. These circumstances may involve both security and privacy concerns.

Platform trust is demonstrated using the EK Credential, Platform Credential and the Conformance Credentials. There is a direct and cryptograph relationship between the EK and the EK Credential and the Platform Credential. The EK and Platform credentials can only demonstrate platform trust when they can be validated by the Endorsement Key.

This command is called revoke trust because by deleting the EK, the EK Credential and the Platform Credential are dissociated from platform therefore invalidating them resulting in the revocation of the trust in the platform. From a trust perspective, the platform associated with these specific credentials no longer exists. However, any transaction that occurred prior to invoking this command will remain valid and trusted to the same extent they would be valid and trusted if the platform were physically destroyed.

This is a non-reversible function. Also, along with the EK, the Owner is also deleted removing all non-migratable keys and owner-specified state.

It is possible to establish new trust in the platform by creating a new EK using the TPM_CreateRevocableEK command. (It is not possible to create an EK using the TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair because that command is not allowed if the revoke trust command is allowed.) Establishing trust in the platform, however, is more than just creating the EK. The EK Credential and the Platform Credential must also be created and associated with the new EK as described above. (The conformance credentials may be obtained from the TPM and Platform manufacturer.) These credentials must be created by an entity that is trusted by those entities interested in the trust of the platform. This may not be a trivial task. For example, an entity willing to create these credentials may want to examine the platform and require physical access during the new EK generation process.

Besides calling one of the two EK creation functions to create the EK, the EK may be "squirted" into the TPM by an external source. If this method is used, tight controls must be placed on the process used to perform this function to prevent exposure or intentional duplication of the EK. Since the revocation and re-creation of the EK are functions intended to be performed after the TPM leaves the trusted manufacturing process, squirting of the EK must be disallowed if the revoke trust command is executed.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MUST not allow both the TPM_CreateRevocableEK and the TPM_CreateEndorsementKeyPair functions to be operational.
2. After an EK is created the TPM MUST NOT allow a new EK to be "squirted" for the lifetime of the TPM.
3. The EK Credential MUST provide an indication within the EK Credential as to how the EK was created. The valid permutations are:
 - a. Squirted, non-revocable
 - b. Squirted, revocable

- 4829 c. Internally generated, non-revocable
- 4830 d. Internally generated, revocable
- 4831 4. If the method for creating the EK during manufacturing is squiring the EK may be either
- 4832 non-revocable or revocable. If it is revocable, the method must provide the insertion or
- 4833 extraction of the EKreset value.

39. Mandatory and Optional Functional Blocks

Start of informative comment

This section lists the main functional blocks of a TPM (in arbitrary order), states whether that block is mandatory or optional in the main TPM specification, and provides brief justification for that choice.

Important notes:

1. The default classification of a TPM function block is “mandatory”, since reclassification from mandatory to optional enables the removal of a function from existing implementations, while reclassification from optional to mandatory may require the addition of functionality to existing implementations.

2. Mandatory functions will be reclassified as optional functions if those functions are not required in some particular type of TCG trusted platform.

3. If a functional block is mandatory in the main specification, the functionality must be present in all TCG trusted platforms.

4. If a functional block is optional in the main specification, each individual platform-specific specification must declare the status of that functionality as either (1) “mandatory-specific” (the functionality must be present in all platforms of that type), or (2) “optional-specific” (the functionality is optional in that type of platform), or (3) “excluded-specific” (the functionality must not be present in that type of platform).

End of informative comment

Classification of TPM functional blocks

1. Legacy (v1.1b) features

a. Anything that was mandatory in v1.1b continues to be mandatory in v1.2. Anything that was optional in v1.1b continues to be optional in v1.2.

b. V1.2 must be backwards compatible with v1.1b. All TPM features in v1.1b were discussed in depth when v1.1b was written, and anything that wasn't thought strictly necessary was tagged as "optional".

2. Number of PCRs

a. The platform specific specification controls the number of PCR on a platform. The TPM MUST implement the mandatory number of PCR specified for a particular platform

i. TPMs designed to work on multiple platforms MUST provide the appropriate number of TPM for all intended platforms. I.e. if one platform requires 16 PCR and the other platform 24 the TPM would have to supply 24 PCR.

b. For TPMs providing backwards compatibility with 1.1 TPM on the PC platform, there MUST be 16 static PCR.

3. Sessions

a. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 3 active sessions

i. Active means currently loaded and addressable inside the TPM

- 4873 ii. Without 3 active sessions many TPM commands cannot function
- 4874 b. The TPM MUST support a minimum of 16 concurrent sessions
- 4875 i. The contextList of currently available session has a minimum size of 16
- 4876 ii. Providing for more concurrent sessions allows the resource manager additional
4877 flexibility and speed
- 4878 4. NVRAM
- 4879 a. There are 20 bytes mandatory of NVRAM in v1.2 as specified by the main
4880 specification. A platform specific specification can require a larger amount of NVRAM
- 4881 b. Cost is important. The mandatory amount of NVRAM must be as small as possible,
4882 because different platforms will require different amounts of NVRAM. 20 bytes are
4883 required for (DIR) backwards compatibility with v1.1b.
- 4884 5. New key types
- 4885 a. The new signing keys are mandatory in v1.2 because they plug a security hole.
- 4886 6. Direct Anonymous Attestation
- 4887 a. This is optional in v1.2
- 4888 b. Cost is important. The DAA function consumes more TPM resources than any other
4889 TPM function, but some platform specific specifications (some servers, for example)
4890 may have no need for the anonymity and pseudonymity provided by DAA.
- 4891 7. Transport sessions
- 4892 a. These are mandatory in v1.2.
- 4893 b. Transport sessions
- 4894 i. Enable protection of data submitted to a TPM and produced by a TPM
- 4895 ii. Enable proof of the TPM commands executed during an arbitrary session.
- 4896 8. Resettable Endorsement Key
- 4897 a. This is optional in v1.2
- 4898 b. Cost is important. Resettable EKs are valuable in some markets segments, but cause
4899 more complexity than non-resettable EKs, which are expected to be the dominant
4900 type of EK
- 4901 9. Monotonic Counter
- 4902 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- 4903 b. A monotonic counter is essential to enable software to defeat certain types of attack,
4904 by enabling it to determine the version (revision) of dynamic data.
- 4905 10. Time Ticks
- 4906 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
- 4907 b. Time stamping is a function that is potentially beneficial to both a user and system
4908 software.
- 4909 11. Delegation (includes DSAP)

- 4910 a. This is mandatory in v1.2
4911 b. Delegation enables the well-established principle of least privilege to be applied to
4912 Owner authorized commands.

4913 12.GPIO

- 4914 a. This is optional in v1.2
4915 b. Cost is important. Not all types of platform will require a secure intra-platform
4916 method of key distribution

4917 13.Locality

- 4918 a. The use of locality is optional in v1.2
4919 b. The structures that define locality are mandatory
4920 c. Locality is an essential part of many (new) TPM commands, but the definition of
4921 locality varies widely from platform to platform, and may not be required by some
4922 types of platforms.
4923 d. It is mandatory that a platform specific specification indicate the definitions of
4924 locality on the platform. It is perfectly reasonable to only define one locality and
4925 ignore all other uses of locality on a platform

4926 14.TPM-audit

- 4927 a. This is optional in v1.2
4928 b. Proper TPM-audit requires support to reliably store logs and control access to the
4929 TPM, and any mechanism (an OS, for example) that could provide such support is
4930 potentially capable of providing an audit log without using TPM-audit. Nevertheless,
4931 TPM-audit might be useful to verify operation of any and all software, including an
4932 OS. TPM-audit is believed to be of no practical use in a client, but might be valuable
4933 in a server, for example.

4934 15.Certified Migration

- 4935 a. This is optional in v1.2
4936 b. Cost is important. Certified Migration enables a business model that may be
4937 nonsense for some platforms.

40. Optional Authentication Encryption

Start of informative comment

The standard authorization encryption mechanism is to use XOR. This is sufficient for almost all use models. There may be additional use models where a different encryption mechanism would be beneficial. This section adds an optional encryption mechanism for those authorizations.

The encryption algorithm is either AES or 3DES. The key and IV for the encryption uses the shared secret generated with the OSAP session.

End of informative comment

1. The TPM MAY support AES or 3DES encryption of AuthData secrets
 - a. Encrypted AuthData values occur in the following commands
 - i. TPM_CreateWrapKey
 - ii. TPM_ChangeAuth
 - iii. TPM_ChangeAuthOwner
 - iv. TPM_Seal
 - v. TPM_MakeIdentity
 - vi. TPM_createCounter
 - vii. TPM_CMK_createKey
 - viii. TPM_nvDefineSpace
 - ix. TPM_delegateCreateKeyDelegation
 - x. TPM_delegateCreateOwnerDelegation
2. The user indicates the use of the optional encryption by using a different entity type during the OSAP session creation.
 - a. The new entity types are
 - i. TPM_ET_KEYAES
 - ii. TPM_ET_OWNERAES
 - b. The TPM internally stores the encryption indication as part of the session and enforces the encryption choice on all subsequent uses of the session
3. If TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS -> FIPS is TRUE
 - a. Then all encrypted authorizations MUST use AES or 3DES
4. The key for the encryption algorithm (AES or DES) is the OSAP shared secret.
 - a. For AES key is the first 16 bytes of the OSAP shared secret
 - i. There is no support for AES keys greater than 128
 - b. For 3DES the system must only use 2 key DES
5. The IV is nonceEven
 - a. For AES use the first 16 bytes of the nonceEven of the command

4974 i. Exception for TPM_CreateKey which uses nonceOdd for the IV

4975 **41. 1.1a and 1.2 Differences**4976 **Start of informative comment**

4977 All 1.2 TPM commands are completely compliant with 1.1b commands with the following
4978 known exceptions.

- 4979 1. TSC_PhysicalPresence does not support configuration and usage in a single step.
- 4980 2. TPM_GetPubKey is unable to read the SRK unless TPM_PERMANENT_FLAGS ->
4981 readSRKPub is TRUE
- 4982 3. TPM_SetTempDeactivated now requires either physical presence or TPM Operators
4983 authorization to execute

4984 **End of informative comment**